Owner's Manual
for Vehicle

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

Contents
A to Z

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

323i
328i
328xi
335i
335xi

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW.

Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

CarManuals2.com

Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

BMW recommends Castrol

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

© 2007 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the
written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
Order No. 01 41 0 014 254
US English VIII/07, 07 09 500
Printed in Germany
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

CarManuals2.com

Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 252.

Using this Owner's Manual
4 Notes
6 Reporting safety defects

At a glance
10 Cockpit
16 iDrive
23 Voice command system

Controls
28 Opening and closing
43 Adjustments
52 Transporting children safely
56 Driving
71 Everything under control
85 Technology for driving comfort and safety
96 Lamps
100 Climate
106 Practical interior accessories

Driving tips
120 Things to remember when driving

Navigation
128 Starting the navigation system
130 Destination entry
143 Destination guidance
152 What to do if ...

Entertainment
156 On/off and settings
160 Radio
166 Satellite radio
169 CD player and CD changer
175 AUX-In port
176 USB-audio interface

Communications
182 Telephoning
197 BMW Assist

Mobility
206 Refueling
208 Wheels and tires
221 Under the hood
226 Maintenance
228 Replacing components
235 Giving and receiving assistance

Reference
242 Technical data
247 Short commands for the voice command system
252 Everything from A-Z

CarManuals2.com

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have tried to make all the information in this Owner's Manual easy to find. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

Should you sell your BMW some day, please remember to hand over the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any other questions, your BMW center will be glad to advise you at any time.

Information on BMW, e.g. on technical aspects, can also be found on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.◀

Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.◀

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.◀

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional extras, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice command system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice command system.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The individual vehicle

When you ordered your BMW, you chose various items of equipment. This Owner's Manual describes the entire array of options and equipment available with a specific BMW model.

Please bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisks * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If equipment in your BMW is not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Editorial notice

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. For this reason, it is possible in exceptional cases that features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

For your own safety

Maintenance and repair

Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and powerful electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. You should therefore have the corresponding work on your vehicle performed only by your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.

When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Original BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.

BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.

BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.

BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants.

Original BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers.

Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radio or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage

to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information.◀

▷ Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.◀

California Proposition 65 warning

California law requires us to issue the following warning:

⚠ Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.

Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.◀

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call 1-800-333-0510 toll-free from anywhere in Canada or 1-613-993-9851 from the Ottawa region and from other countries, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville, Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa, ON, K1A 0N5.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

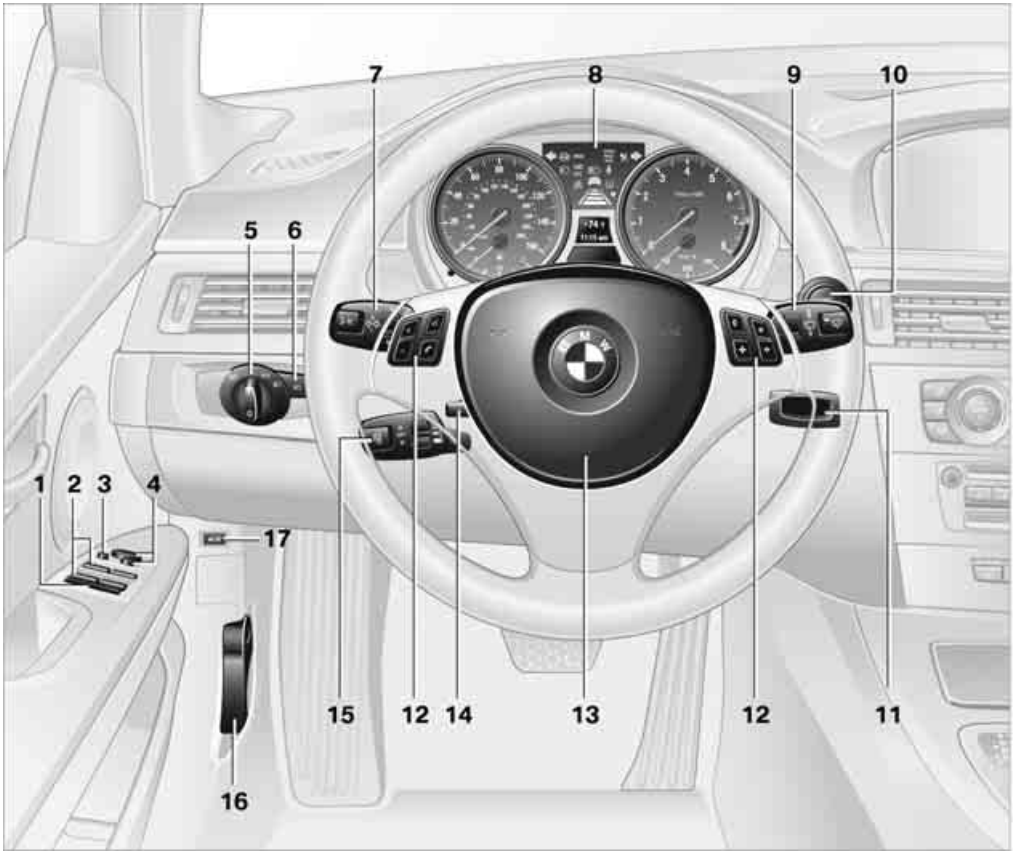
At a glance

This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment. The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating the various systems.

CarManuals2.com

Cockpit

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



1 Safety switch for electric rear windows 39

2 Opening and closing windows 38

3 Folding exterior mirrors in and out* 49

4 Adjusting exterior mirrors, automatic curb monitor* 49

5 Parking lamps 96

Low beams 96

Automatic headlamp control* 96
Adaptive Head Light* 98

6 Fog lamps* 98

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

7

Turn signals 60

High beams, headlamp flasher 98

Roadside parking lamps* 98

BC Computer 73

Settings and information about the vehicle 75

Instrument lighting 99

8 Instrument cluster 12

9

Windshield wipers 61

Rain sensor* 61

Sports Wagon:
Rear window wiper 62

10 START STOP ENGINE Switching the ignition on/off and starting/stopping the engine 56

11 Ignition lock 56

12 Buttons* on the steering wheel

Telephone*:

- ▷ Press: accepting and ending a call, starting dialing* selected phone numbers. Redialing if no phone number is selected
- ▷ Press longer: redialing

Volume

Activating/deactivating voice command system* 23

Changing radio station
Selecting music track

Scrolling through phone book and lists with stored phone numbers

Individually programmable 50

Individually programmable 50

13 Horn: the entire surface

14 Adjusting the steering wheel 50

15

Cruise control* 63

Active cruise control* 64

16 Releasing the hood 221

17 Opening the tailgate/luggage compartment lid*

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Instrument cluster

1 Speedometer

2 Indicator lamps for turn signals

3 Indicator and warning lamps 13

4 Displays for active cruise control* 64

5 Tachometer 71

6 Engine oil temperature* 72
Energy Control* 72

7 Display for
- ▷ Clock 71
- ▷ Outside temperature 71
- ▷ Indicator and warning lamps 81

8 Display for
- ▷ Position of automatic transmission* 58
- ▷ Computer 73
- ▷ Date of next scheduled service, and remaining distance to be driven 76
- ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 71
- ▷ Checking engine oil level* 222
- ▷ Settings and information 75
- ▷ ⚠ There is a Check Control message 81

9 Fuel gauge 72

10 Resetting the trip odometer 71

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Indicator and warning lamps

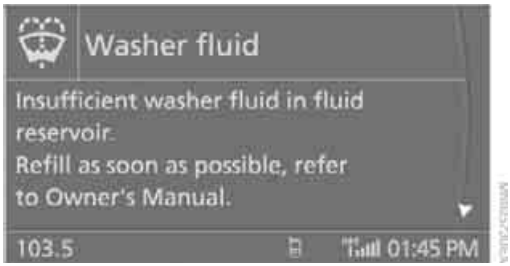
The concept

Indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Some lamps are checked for proper functioning and thus come on briefly when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Explanatory text messages

Text messages at the lower edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.



You can call up more information, e.g. on the cause of a malfunction and on how to respond, via Check Control, refer to page 81.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

Indicator lamps without text messages

The following indicator lamps notify you that certain functions are active:

High beams/headlamp flasher 98

Fog lamps* 98

Lamp flashes:
DSC or DTC is regulating the propulsive forces in order to maintain driving stability 87

BRAKE Parking brake applied 57

Canada: parking brake applied 57

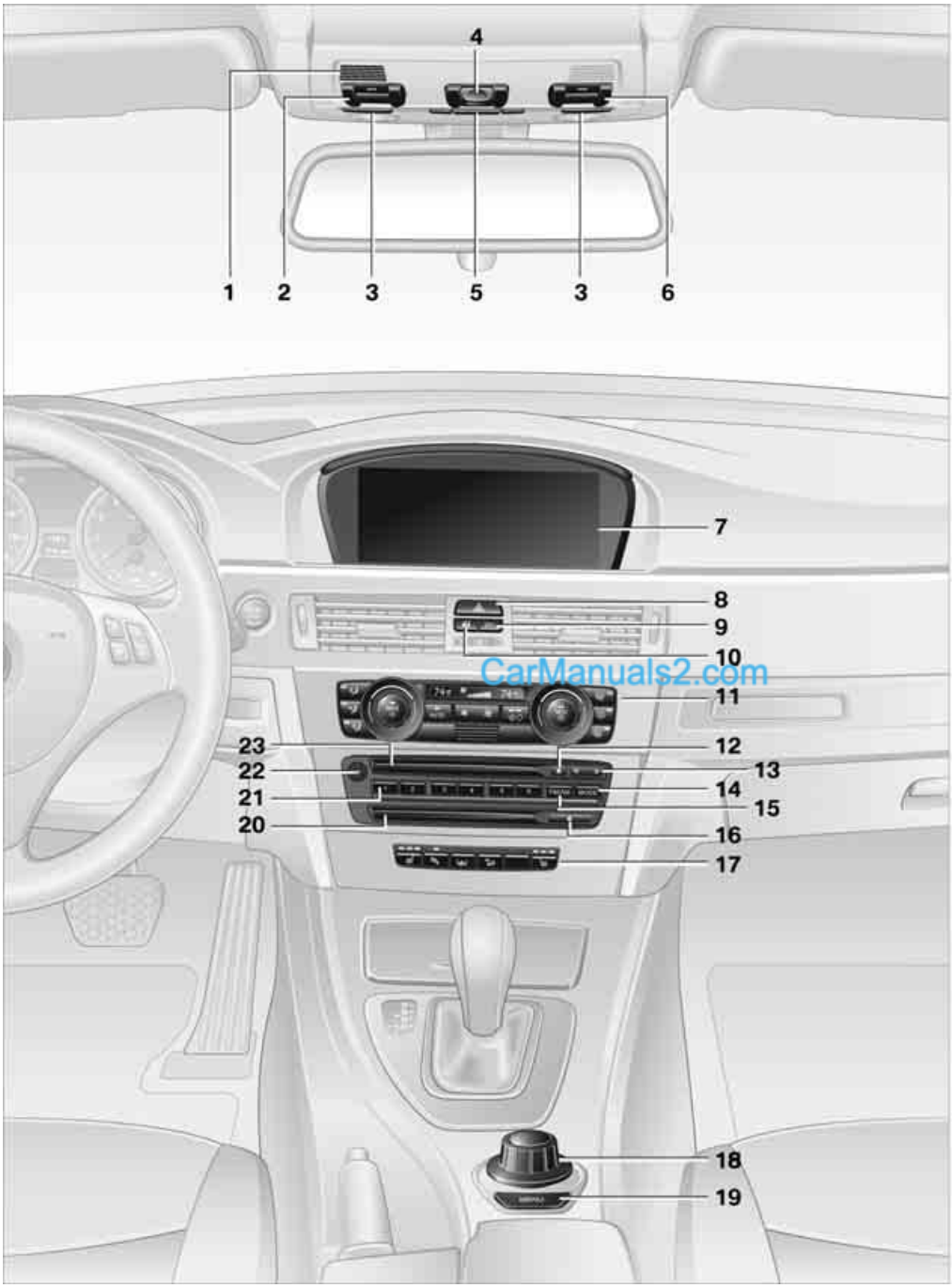
SERVICE ENGINE SOON Engine malfunction with adverse effect on exhaust emissions 227

Canada: engine malfunction with adverse effect on exhaust emissions 227

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Around the center console: controls and displays



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1 Microphone for voice command system* and for telephone in hands-free mode*

2 SOS: initiating an Emergency Request call* 235

3 Reading lamps 99

4 Glass roof/panorama glass roof* 39

5 Interior lamps 99

6 Passenger airbag status lamp* 95

7 Control Display 16

8 Hazard warning flashers

9 DTC Dynamic Traction Control 87

10 Central locking system 32

11 Automatic climate control

Air distribution to the windshield 101

Air distribution to the upper body area 101

Air distribution to the footwell 101

AUTO Automatic air distribution and flow rate 102

Cooling function 103

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 102

Recirculated-air mode 102

MAX Maximum cooling 102

REST Residual heat mode 103

Air flow rate 102

Defrosting windows 103

Rear window defroster 103

12 Ejecting audio CD 156

13 Changing

- Radio station 160
- Track 170

14 Selecting radio, CD and CD changer

15 Selecting AM or FM waveband

16 Ejecting navigation DVD 128

17

Heated seats* 47

PDC Park Distance Control* 85

Sedan:
Roller sun blind* 109

HDC Hill Descent Control* 87

18 Controller 16
Can be turned, pressed, or moved horizontally in four directions

19 Opening start menu on Control Display 17

20 Drive for navigation DVD 128

21 Programmable memory keys 21

22 Switching audio sources on/off and adjusting volume 156

23 Drive for audio CD 156

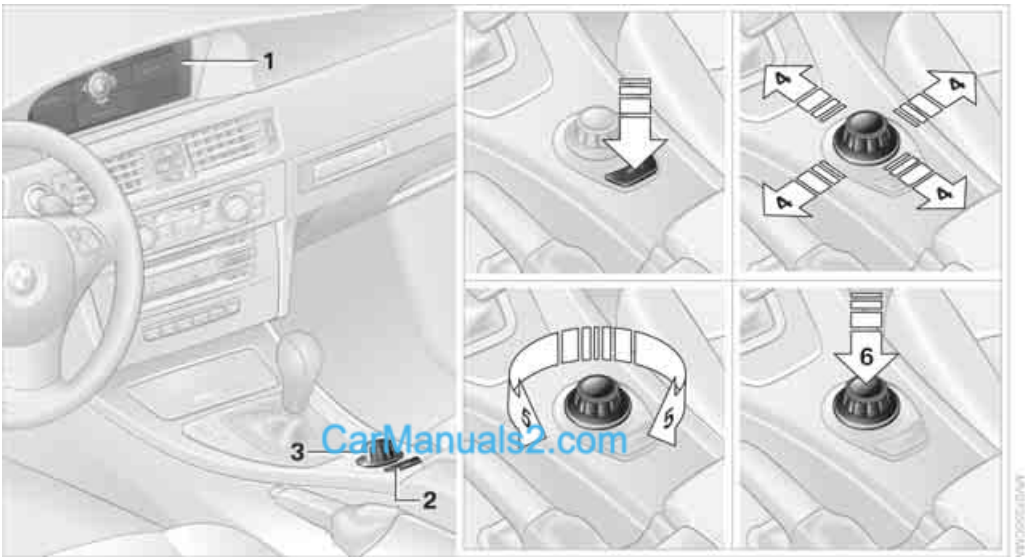
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

iDrive

iDrive integrates the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a single central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu navigation. The control of the individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

Controls



1 Control Display

2 **MENU** button
Opening start menu

3 Controller
The controller can be used to select menu items and to adjust settings:

- ▷ Move in four directions, arrow **4**
- ▷ Turn, arrow **5**
- ▷ Push, arrow **6**

⚠ Operate the controller only when traffic and road conditions allow this, to avoid endangering the car's occupants and other road users by being distracted.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Menu overview

Communication

- Telephone*
- BMW Assist* or TeleService*

CarManuals2.com

Navigation

- Navigation system
- Onboard information, e.g. for displaying the average fuel consumption

Entertainment

- Radio
- CD player and CD changer*
- AUX-In port, USB-audio interface* for external audio device

Climate

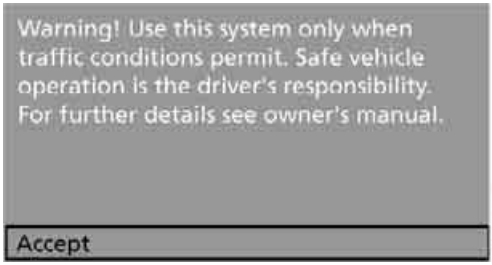
- Vent settings
- Automatic programs
- Parked car operation

i menu

- Switching off Control Display
- Tone and display settings
- Settings for your vehicle, e.g. for the central locking system
- Display of service requirements and dates for statutory inspections
- Settings for telephone

Operating principle

As of radio readiness, the following message appears on the Control Display:



To hide the message:
Press the controller.
The start menu is displayed.

The message is automatically hidden after approx. 10 seconds.

Start menu

All iDrive functions can be called up via five menu items.

Opening start menu

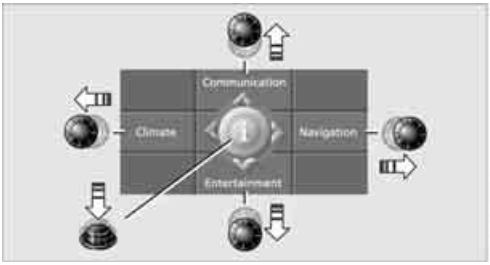
Press the **MENU** button.

To open the start menu from the i menu:

Press the **MENU** button twice.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Calling up menu items in the start menu



As of radio readiness, refer to page 56:
Via the start menu you can call up the four menu items of Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate by moving the controller forwards, backwards, to the left or to the right.

You can call up the i menu by pressing the controller.

Convenient call-up of menu items

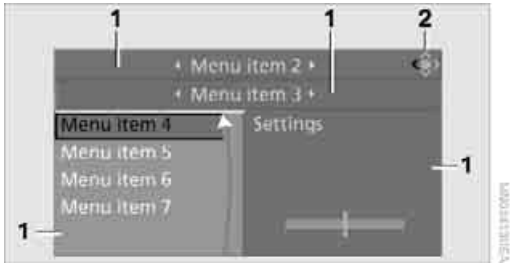
The convenient call-up function enables you to:

- ▷ Call up a menu item from the start menu in the view last displayed
- ▷ Switch directly between Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate without having to press the MENU button

CarManuals2.com

To do so, move the controller in the corresponding direction and hold it for more than approx. 2 seconds.

Displays in menu



1 Each menu is subdivided into fields. The active field is highlighted.

2 A symbol indicates the start menu item last selected.

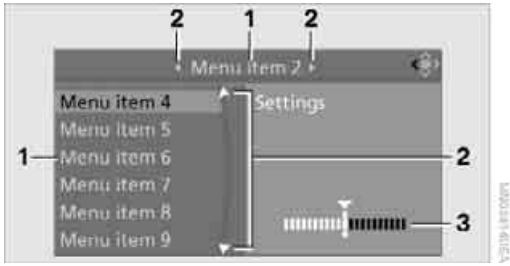
Communication

Navigation or onboard information

Entertainment

Climate

i menu



1 Menu items are usually grouped in horizontal or vertical lists.

2 In these lists, arrows indicate the possibility of accessing other menu items that are not currently visible.

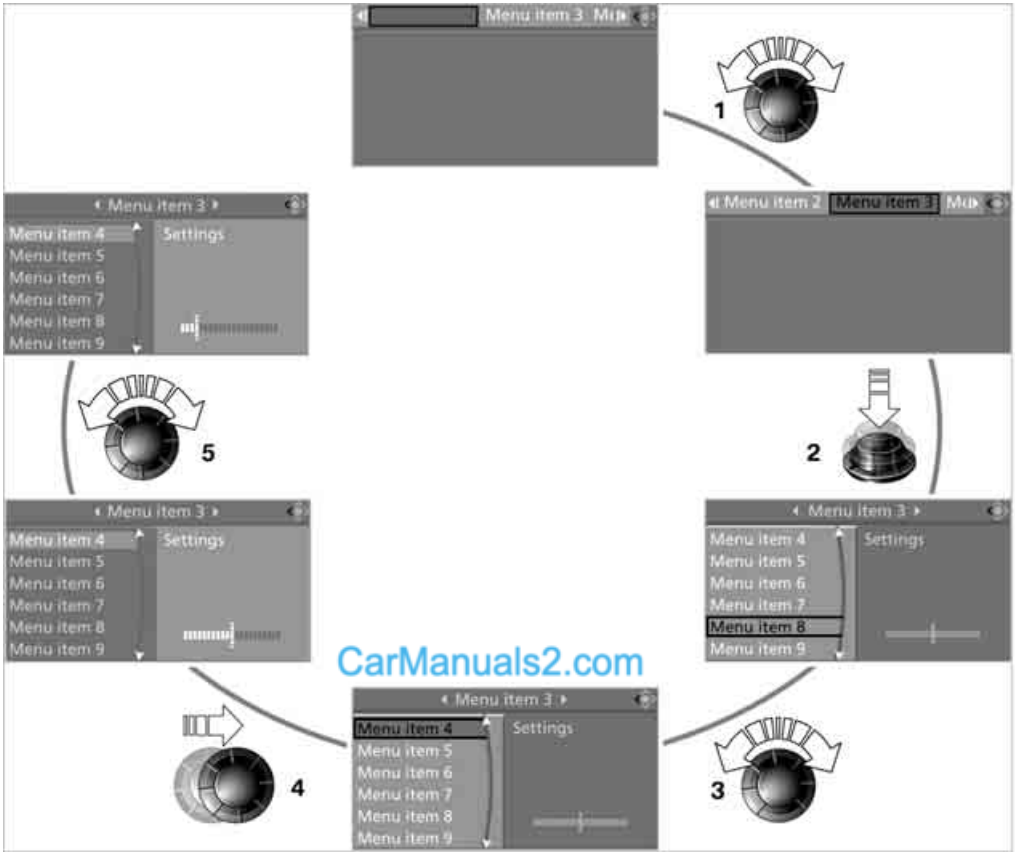
3 Settings are represented graphically or as numerical values.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Operating principle at a glance

The following is a general description of operations using iDrive.

For an exemplary step-by-step application refer to Setting the time, page 79.



1 Selecting a menu item:
- ▷ Turn the controller; the highlight marker moves
- ▷ Menu items in white can be selected by highlighting them

2 Activating a menu item:
- ▷ Press the controller
- ▷ New menu items are displayed or the function is executed

3 Selecting a menu item: refer to **1**

4 Switching between fields:
- ▷ Briefly move the controller to the left, right, forward, or backward
- ▷ Release the controller
- ▷ The active field is brighter in color

5 Adjusting settings:
- ▷ Turn the controller
- ▷ Graphic display, numerical value or text displays can be changed
- ▷ Confirm by changing the field

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Status information

1 Display for:
   - ▷ Entertainment:
     Radio, CD or
   - ▷ Telephone* in "Communication":
     Name of the connected mobile phone, network search or no network
   - ▷ "BMW Assist"*:
     Active voice connection with a BMW Assist service

2 Entertainment audio output off

3 Display for traffic information*:
   "TI":
   Traffic information for the navigation system can be received and transmission is switched on

4 Display for:
   - ▷ New entries present in "Missed calls"*
   - ▷ ▲ Roaming active

5 It is possible to make calls* if the mobile phone is paired with the vehicle
   Reception strength of mobile phone network, display depending on mobile phone

6 Time

Other displays:
Status information is temporarily hidden during Check Control message displays or entries via the voice command system*.

Assistance window*

Additional information can be displayed in the assistance window:

- ▷ The computer or the trip computer*
- ▷ The arrow or map view in vehicles with navigation system*
- ▷ The current position*

Selecting display

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item.
3. Press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Switching assistance window on/off

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.
2. Select "Assist. window off" and press the controller.

To turn back on, switch to the assistance window and press the controller.

Switching Control Display off/on

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Display off" and press the controller.

Press the controller to switch on.

Programmable memory keys

Using the programmable memory keys, you can store and execute certain iDrive functions:

- ▷ Navigation destinations*
- ▷ Entertainment:
  - ▷ Radio stations
  - ▷ CD
  - ▷ CD compartment of CD changer
  - ▷ AUX
- ▷ Telephone: phone numbers

The assignment of the programmable memory keys is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Storing functions

Navigation destinations*

1. Select the navigation destination, e.g. in the destination list or address book.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the key longer than 2 seconds.

Special features:

- ▷ If destination guidance and the map view have been started, the current destination is stored.
- ▷ If the destination is entered via map, the coordinates in the crosshairs are stored, not the current destination.

CarManuals2.com

Telephone, phone numbers

1. Enter the phone number or select the number from a list of stored phone numbers, e.g. the A-Z list.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the key longer than 2 seconds.

If the phone number is associated with a name, the name is also stored.

Entertainment

The item stored in the Entertainment menu is the source that is playing at the time of storage, e.g. a radio station, irrespective of what was selected on the Control Display.

1. Select the desired function, e.g. radio station or CD.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the key longer than 2 seconds.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

If the car is equipped with two drives and a CD with compressed audio files is played, the current track is stored.◀

Executing a function

1 ... 6 Press the key.

CarManuals2.com

The function is executed immediately. This means that, for example, if a phone number is selected, the connection is established, or if a navigation destination is called up, destination guidance is started.

Displaying memory key assignments

You can have the assignment of a memory key displayed by touching the key with your finger. Please do not wear gloves when doing so. Touching the keys with an object such as a pen will not work.

Displaying brief information

1 ... 6 Touch the key.

The key assignment is displayed.

Navigation destination

Entertainment source

Telephone, phone number

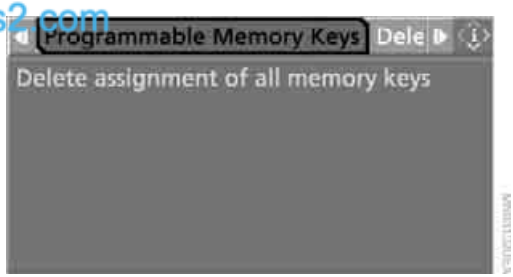
— Not assigned

Displaying detailed information

1 ... 6 Touch the key for a longer period.

Clearing key assignments

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Select "Programmable Memory Keys" and press the controller.



6. Select "Delete assignment of all memory keys" and press the controller.
7. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Voice command system*

The concept

The voice command system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

CarManuals2.com

Individual menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands. It is not necessary to use the controller.

The voice command system transforms your oral commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

The voice command system uses a special microphone located in the area of the interior rearview mirror, refer to page 14.

Precondition

Via iDrive, select the language in which the voice command system is operating, so that the spoken commands can be identified. Selecting the language for iDrive, refer to page 84.

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice command system.

Saying commands

Activating voice command system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.

This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal indicate that the voice command system is ready to receive spoken commands.

2. Say the command.
   The command appears on the Control Display.

This symbol appears on the Control Display when you can enter additional commands.
If no further commands are possible, continue by operating the item of equipment via iDrive.

Terminating or canceling voice command system

Press the button on the steering wheel
or

›Cancel‹

Commands

Having the possible commands read aloud

You can have the system read aloud the possible commands related to the selected menu

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

item on the Control Display.
To have the possible commands read out to you:

›Options‹

For instance, if you have selected "CD", the commands available for operating the CD player and CD changer are read out*.

Opening help

›Help‹

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Radio on‹ or ›Turn radio on‹

Calling up functions immediately via short commands

Short commands enable you to perform certain functions immediately, irrespective of which menu item is selected, refer to page 247.

CarManuals2.com

Opening the start menu

›Main menu‹

Example: selecting a track

1. If necessary, switch on entertainment audio output.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Entertainment‹
   The system says:
   ››Entertainment‹‹

4. ›CD‹
   The system says:
   ››CD on‹‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Press the button on the steering wheel.

6. Select a track, e.g.:
›Track 1‹
The system says:
››Track 1‹‹

CarManuals2.com

Notes

For information on voice control of the telephone, refer also to the separate Owner's Manual.◀

For voice commands, bear in mind the following:

- Pronounce the commands and digits smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphases and pauses. The same applies to spelling when entering a destination for navigation.
- Always speak the commands in the language of the voice command system.
- When selecting a radio station, use the standard pronunciation of the station name.
- For entries in the voice-activated phone book, only use names in the language of the voice command system and no abbreviations.
- Keep the doors, windows and glass roof/panorama glass roof closed to prevent interference from outside noise.
- Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience, are described here.

CarManuals2.com

Opening and closing

Keys/remote controls

Each remote control contains a rechargeable battery that is automatically recharged when it is in the ignition lock while the car is being driven. Use each remote control at least twice a year for longer road trips in order to maintain the batteries' charge status. In cars with convenient access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 38.

The settings called up and implemented when the car is unlocked depend on which remote control is used to unlock the car, refer to Personal Profile, next column.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in the remote control, page 226.

Integrated key

Press button **1** to release the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Glove compartment, refer to page 109
- ▷ Driver's door, refer to page 31
- ▷ Sedan:
  Luggage compartment lid, refer to page 33

New remote controls

Your BMW center can supply new remote controls with integrated keys as additional units or as replacements in the event of loss.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set many of your BMW's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences. Without any action on your part, Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use. When you unlock the car, the remote control used for the purpose is recognized and the settings stored for it are called up and implemented.

This means that your personal settings will be activated for you, even if in the meantime your car was used by someone else with another remote control and the corresponding settings. The individual settings are stored for up to three remote controls.

Personal Profile settings

For more information on specific settings, refer to the specified pages.

- ▷ Assignment of programmable memory keys, refer to page 21
- ▷ Response of the central locking system when the car is unlocked, refer to page 29
- ▷ Automatic locking of the vehicle, refer to page 32
- ▷ Automatic call-up* of the driver's seat position after unlocking, refer to page 47
- ▷ Programming buttons* on the steering wheel, refer to page 50

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

- Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 61
- Settings for the display on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster:
  - 12h/24h format of the clock, refer to page 80
  - Date format, refer to page 81
  - Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page 84
  - Language on the Control Display, refer to page 84
  - Units of measure for fuel consumption, distance covered/remaining distances, and temperature, refer to page 76
- Show visual warning for Park Distance Control PDC*, refer to page 85
- Light settings:
  - Welcome lamps, refer to page 96
  - Pathway lighting, refer to page 97
  - Daytime running lamps, refer to page 97
- Automatic climate control: activating/deactivating AUTO program, cooling function and automatic recirculated-air control, setting temperature, air flow rate and distribution, refer to page 101 ff
- Entertainment:
  - Audio volume, refer to page 157
  - Tone control, refer to page 157
  - Speed-dependent volume control, refer to page 157

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system is ready for operation whenever the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors
- Luggage compartment lid/tailgate
- Fuel filler door

Operating from outside

- Via the remote control
- Via the door lock
- In cars with convenient access*, via the handles on the driver's and front passenger's doors

The anti-theft system is also operated at the same time. It prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or door handles. In addition, if the remote control is used, the interior lamps and the door's courtesy lamps* are also switched on or off. The alarm system* is also armed or disarmed.
For further details of the alarm system, refer to page 35.

Operating from inside

By means of the button for central locking, refer to page 32.

In the event of a sufficiently severe accident, the central locking system unlocks automatically. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: Using the remote control

Persons or animals in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside. You should therefore take the remote control with you when you leave the vehicle so that the latter can be opened from outside.◀

Unlocking

Press the button.
The interior lamps, the courtesy lamps* and the welcome lamps come on.

You can set how the vehicle is to be unlocked. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

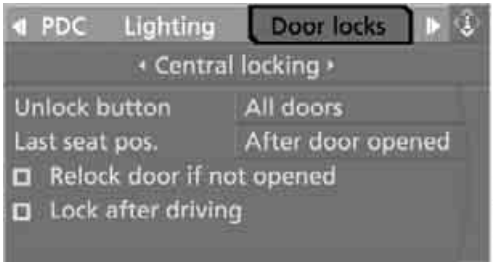
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the MENU button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Unlock button" and press the controller.
8. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "All doors"
     Press the button once to unlock the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"
     Press the button once to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler door. Press the button twice to unlock the entire vehicle.

9. Press the controller.

Convenient opening

Hold the button down.
The windows and the glass roof*/panorama glass roof* are opened.

CarManuals2.com

Locking

Press the LOCK button.

Switching on interior lamps

While the car is locked:
Press the LOCK button.
You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages etc.

Sedan: Unlocking the luggage compartment lid

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The luggage compartment lid opens a short distance, regardless of whether it was locked or unlocked.

▷ The luggage compartment lid swings back and up when opened. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance. To avoid locking yourself out by accident, do not place the remote control in the cargo bay. A previously locked luggage compartment lid is locked again after closing.
Before and after each trip, check that the luggage compartment lid has not been inadvertently unlocked.◀

Sports Wagon: Unlocking the tailgate

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The tailgate opens a short distance, regardless of whether it was locked or unlocked.

The tailgate swings back and up when opened. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance. To avoid locking yourself out by accident, do not place the remote control in the cargo bay. A previously locked tailgate is locked again after closing.
Before and after each trip, check that the tailgate has not been inadvertently unlocked.◀

▷ If you press the button on the remote control a second time for a longer period within three seconds, the roll-up cover is raised*. Before closing the tailgate, press the roll-up cover downward until it engages.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Confirmation signals

You can activate or deactivate the confirmation signals.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Confirmation" and press the controller.

7. Select the desired signal.
8. Press the controller.
   The signal is activated.

Malfunctions

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. If this occurs, unlock and lock the car at the door lock with the integrated key.

If the car can no longer be locked with a remote control, the battery in the remote control is discharged. Use the remote control on an extended trip to recharge the battery, refer to page 28. The remote control for convenient access* contains a battery that may have to be changed, refer to page 38.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communications Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

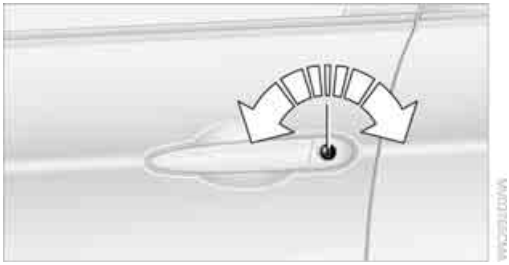
FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◀

Opening and closing: Using the door lock



You can set the way in which the car is unlocked, refer to page 29.

Convenient operation

At the door lock, you can operate the windows and glass roof*/panorama glass roof*.

Hold the key in the position for unlocking or locking.

Watch during the closing process to ensure that no one is injured. Releasing the key stops the operation.◀

CarManuals2.com

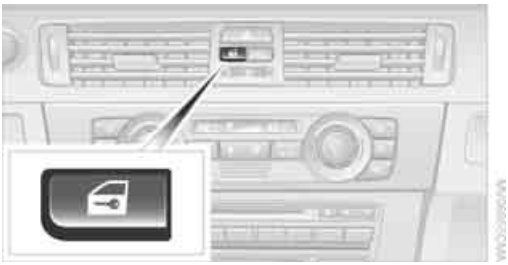
Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can lock and unlock the driver's door by turning the

integrated key to the corresponding limit positions in the door lock.

Opening and closing: From inside

CarManuals2.com



This button serves to unlock or lock doors and the luggage compartment lid/tailgate, but does not activate the anti-theft system. The fuel filler door remains unlocked.

Automatic locking

You can also set the situations in which the car locks:

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.

7. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Relock door if not opened"
     The central locking system automatically locks the vehicle after a short time when no door has been opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after driving"
     The central locking system automatically locks the vehicle as soon as you drive off.
8. Press the controller.
   The setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening doors

- ▷ Either unlock the doors together using the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- ▷ pull on the door handle of each door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

Locking

- ▷ Use the central locking button to lock all of the doors simultaneously, or
- ▷ press down the safety lock button of a door. To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

⚠ Persons or animals in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside. You should therefore take the remote control with

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

you when you leave the vehicle so that the latter can be opened from outside.◀

Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate

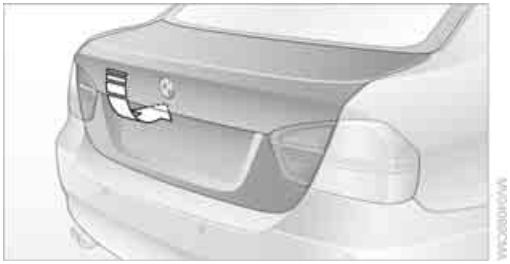
▷ In order to avoid damage, make sure there is sufficient clearance before opening the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.◀

Opening from inside

Press the button: the luggage compartment lid/ tailgate opens unless it has been locked.

Opening from outside

Sedan



Press the button, see arrow, or the button on the remote control for a longer period. The luggage compartment lid will open slightly. It can now be swung upwards.

Sports Wagon

CarManuals2.com

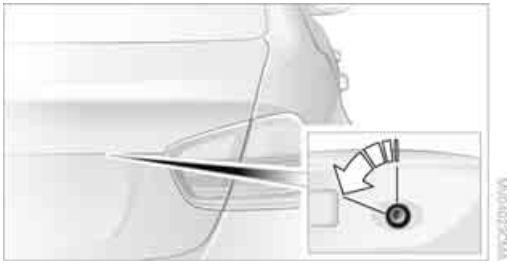
Press the button, see arrow, or the button on the remote control for a longer period. The tailgate will open slightly. It can now be swung upwards.

Press the button, see arrow, or the button on the remote control a second time for a longer period within three seconds: the roll-up cover is raised.

Before closing the tailgate, press the cover downward until it engages.

Opening manually

Sedan



The integrated key of the remote control, refer to page 28, fits the luggage compartment lid lock.

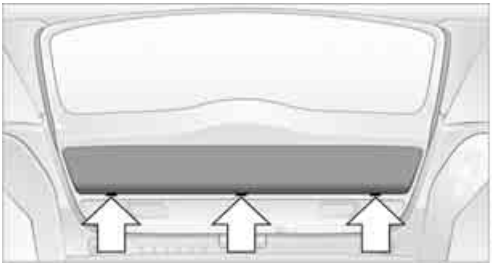
Turn the key all the way to the left: the luggage compartment lid opens.

If you open the luggage compartment lid using the key while the alarm system is armed, the alarm will be triggered. Switching off an alarm, refer to page 36.◀

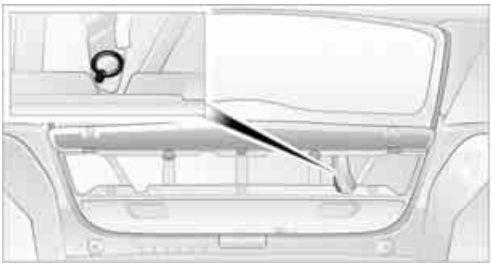
Sports Wagon

In the event of an electrical malfunction:

1. From the cargo bay, swing the cover on the tailgate upward.



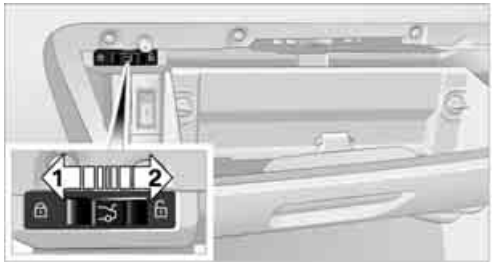
2. Pull the ring upward. The tailgate is unlocked.



3. Open the tailgate and close the cover again.

The tailgate is locked as soon as it is pressed shut.

Locking or unlocking separately



The switch is located in the glove compartment.

1 Locking the luggage compartment lid

2 Unlocking the luggage compartment lid

Locking separately

Push the switch in the direction of arrow **1**. The luggage compartment lid is locked and cannot be unlocked using the central locking system.
If you give the remote control without the integrated key to someone else while the glove compartment is locked, the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened. This is an advantage when valet parking, for example. Locking the glove compartment, refer to page 110.

Unlocking separately

Push the switch in the direction of arrow **2**.

Emergency release

Pull the lever in the cargo bay. The luggage compartment lid is unlocked.

CarManuals2.com

Closing

The handle recesses on the interior trim of the luggage compartment lid/tailgate make it easier to pull down.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Make sure that the closing path of the luggage compartment lid/tailgate is clear, otherwise injuries may result.◀

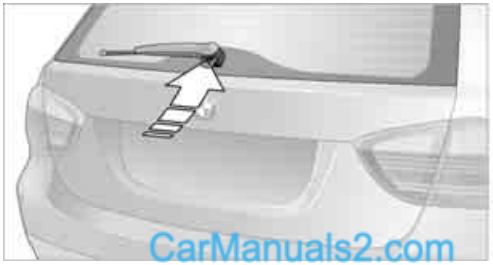
Sedan

Sports Wagon

Sports Wagon: opening and closing the rear window

Small items can be loaded and unloaded quickly when the rear window is opened separately.

The roll-up cover is raised when the rear window is opened. Before closing the rear window, press the roll-up cover downward until it engages.◀



Press the button: the rear window opens slightly. It can now be swung upwards.

Press the window shut to close it.

Make sure that the corners of any pointed or sharp-edged cargo are padded if they could bump against the rear window while the vehicle is in motion, otherwise the heating elements of the rear window could be damaged.◀

Alarm system*

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:

- When a door, the hood or the luggage compartment lid/tailgate is opened
- To movements inside the vehicle: Interior motion sensor, refer to page 36
- When the car's inclination changes, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away
- When there is an interruption in the power supply from the battery

The alarm system signals unauthorized entry attempts for a short time by means of:

- An acoustic alarm
- Switching on the hazard warning flashers
- Flashing the high beams

Arming and disarming

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

You can open the luggage compartment lid/tailgate even when the alarm system is armed, by pressing the button on the remote control, refer to page 30. The lid is locked and monitored again as soon as you close it.

Panic mode*

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation:

Press the button for at least three seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Switching off an alarm

- Unlock the car with the remote control, refer to page 29.
- Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp displays

- The indicator lamp under the inside rear-view mirror flashes continuously: the system is armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after locking: doors, hood, luggage compartment lid/tailgate or rear window are not properly closed. Even if you do not close the alerted area, the system begins to monitor the remaining areas, and the indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. The interior motion sensor and the tilt alarm sensor are not activated.
- The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking: your vehicle has not been disturbed while you were away.
- If the indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted in the ignition, but for no longer than approx. 5 minutes: your vehicle has been disturbed while you were away.

CarManuals2.com

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored. The alarm system reacts, e.g. to attempts to steal a wheel or tow the vehicle.

Interior motion sensor

In order for the interior motion sensor to function properly, the windows and glass roof must be completely closed*.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may be switched off at the same time. This prevents unintentional alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- In duplex garages
- During transport on car-carrying trains, boats/ships or on a trailer
- When animals are to remain in the vehicle

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the LOCK button on the remote control again as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then flashes continuously. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and subsequently locked again.

Convenient access*

Convenient access enables you to enter your vehicle without needing to hold the remote control in your hand. All you need to do is wear the remote control close to your body, e.g. in your jacket pocket. The vehicle detects the corresponding remote control within the immediate vicinity or in the passenger compartment.

Convenient access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking/locking the vehicle
- Unlocking the luggage compartment lid/tailgate separately
- Engine starting
- Convenient closure

Functional requirement

- The vehicle or the luggage compartment lid/tailgate can only be locked when the vehicle detects that the remote control currently in use is outside of the vehicle.
- The vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked again until after approx. 2 seconds.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

▷ The engine can only be started when the vehicle detects that the remote control currently in use is inside the vehicle.

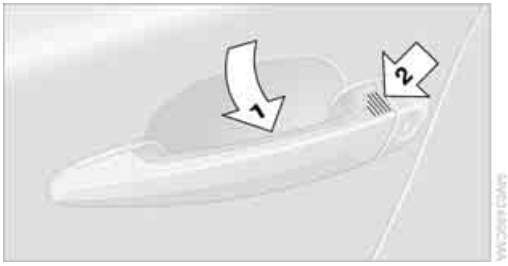
Comparison to the standard remote control

In general, there is no difference between using convenient access or pressing the buttons on the remote control to carry out the functions mentioned above. You should therefore first familiarize yourself with the instructions on opening and closing starting on page 28.

Special features regarding the use of convenient access are described below.

▷ If you notice a brief delay while opening or closing windows or the glass roof/panorama glass roof, the system is checking whether a remote control is inside the vehicle. Please repeat the opening or closing procedure, if necessary.◀

Unlocking



Grasp the handle on the driver's or front passenger's door completely, arrow **1**. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Locking

Touch the surface, arrow **2**, with your finger for approx. 1 second. This corresponds to pressing the LOCK button.

▷ To preserve the battery, please make sure that the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off before locking the vehicle.◀

CarManuals2.com

Convenient closure

For convenient closure, keep your finger on the surface, arrow **2**.

Unlocking the luggage compartment lid/tailgate separately

Press the button on the outside of the luggage compartment lid/tailgate. This corresponds to pressing the button.

▷ If the vehicle detects that a remote control has been accidentally left inside the locked vehicle's cargo bay after the luggage compartment lid/tailgate or rear window is closed, the lid will reopen. The hazard warning flashers flash and an acoustic signal* sounds.◀

Switching on radio readiness

Radio readiness is switched on by pressing the start/stop button, refer to page 56.

▷ Do not depress the brake or the clutch, otherwise the engine will start.◀

Starting the engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition when a remote control is inside the vehicle. It is not necessary to insert a remote control into the ignition switch, refer to page 56.

Switching off the engine in cars with automatic transmission

The engine can only be switched off when the selector lever is in position P, refer to page 57. To switch the engine off when the selector lever is in position N, the remote control must be in the ignition switch.

Before driving a vehicle with automatic transmission into a car wash

1. Insert remote control into ignition switch.
2. Depress the brake.
3. Move the selector lever to position N.
4. Switch off the engine.

The vehicle can roll.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Malfunction

Convenient access may malfunction due to local radio waves. If this happens, open or close the vehicle via the buttons on the remote control or using the integrated key. To start the engine afterward, insert the remote control into the ignition switch.

CarManuals2.com

Warning lamps

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when you attempt to start the engine: the engine cannot be started. The remote control is not inside the vehicle or is malfunctioning. Take the remote control with you inside the vehicle or have it checked. If necessary, insert another remote control into the ignition switch.

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up while the engine is running: the remote control is no longer inside the vehicle. After the engine is switched off, the engine can only be restarted within approx. 10 seconds.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on and a message appears on the Control Display: replace the battery in the remote control.

Replacing the battery

The remote control for convenient access contains a battery that will need to be replaced from time to time.

1. Take the integrated key out of the remote control, refer to page 28.

2. Remove the cover.
3. Insert the new battery with the plus side facing up.
4. Press the cover on to close.

Take the old battery to a battery collection point or to your BMW center.◀

Windows

To prevent injuries, watch the windows while closing them.

Take the remote control with you when you leave the car, otherwise children could operate the electric windows and possibly injure themselves.◀

Opening, closing

▷ Press the switch to the resistance point: The window opens as long as you press the switch.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

There are separate switches in the rear seat armrests.

After switching off the ignition

When the remote control is removed or the ignition is switched off, you can still operate the windows for approx. 1 minute as long as no door is opened.

For information on convenient operation via the remote control or the door lock, refer to page 29 or 31. For information on closing with convenient access, refer to Locking on page 30.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted and the window reopens slightly.

Despite the pinch protection system check and clear the window's travel path prior to closing it, otherwise the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.
Do not install any accessories that might interfere with window movement. Otherwise the pinch protection system could be impaired.◀

Closing without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, or if ice on the windows, etc., prevents you from closing the windows normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there. Pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch again past the resistance point within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there. The window closes without pinch protection.

CarManuals2.com

Safety switch

With the safety switch, you can prevent the rear windows from being opened or closed via the switches in the rear passenger area, by children, for example. When the safety function is switched on, the LED comes on.

Always press the safety switch when children ride in the rear, otherwise unchecked closing of the windows could lead to injuries.◀

Sedan: glass roof*, electric

To prevent injuries, watch the glass roof while closing it.
Take the remote control with you when you leave the car, otherwise children could operate the roof and possibly injure themselves.◀

Raising

Press the switch.

▷ The closed glass roof is raised and the sliding visor opens slightly.

▷ The open glass roof automatically travels into the raised position. The sliding visor remains completely open.

Opening, closing

▷ Press the switch backwards to the resistance point.
The glass roof and the sliding visor open together as long as you hold the switch in this position.

▷ Press the switch backwards past the resistance point.
The glass roof and the sliding visor open automatically. Briefly press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

You can close the glass roof in a similar manner by pressing the switch forwards. The sliding visor remains open and can be closed by hand.

For information on convenient operation via the remote control or door lock, refer to page 29 or 31.

After switching off the ignition

When the remote control is removed or the ignition is switched off, you can still operate the roof

for approx. 1 minute as long as no door has been opened.

Pinch protection system

If the glass roof encounters an obstruction during closing from approximately the middle of the opening in the roof, or during closing from the raised position, the closing movement is interrupted and the glass roof is opened again slightly.

⚠ Despite the pinch protection system check and clear the roof's travel path prior to closing it, otherwise the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the roof would continue closing.◀

Closing without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, press the switch forward past the resistance point. The roof closes without pinch protection.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power failure, there is a possibility that the glass roof can only be raised. The system must be initialized. BMW recommends having this work done by your BMW center.

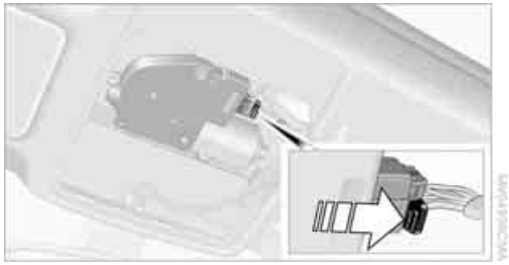
Closing manually*

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the glass roof manually:

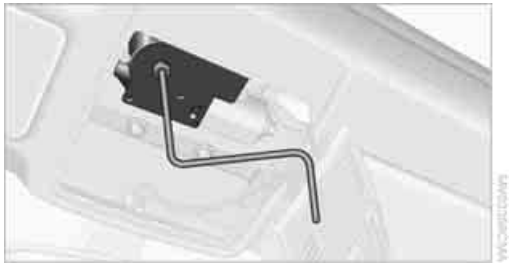
1. Unclip the front of the cover of the interior lamps using the screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 228.

2. Insert the screwdriver into the openings on each side to press the clips.

3. Remove the control unit.
4. Unplug the motor. Considerably less effort will be required for manual operation.



5. Insert the Allen wrench* supplied with the onboard tool kit, refer to page 228, into the opening provided. Move the glass roof in the desired direction.



6. Reinstall the control unit and reattach the lamp cover.

Sports Wagon: Panorama glass roof*

⚠ To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the panorama glass roof and keep

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

it in your field of vision until it is shut.
Take the remote control with you when you leave the car, otherwise children could operate the roof and possibly injure themselves.◀

Raising

Press the switch.
The closed roof is raised and the sliding visor opens slightly.

Do not close the sliding visor forcibly with the roof in the raised position, as this would damage the mechanism.◀

Opening, closing

Sliding visor

CarManuals2.com

The sliding visor can be opened or closed separately when the roof is in the closed or raised position.

- ▷ Press the switch backwards to the resistance point.
  The sliding visor opens as long as you keep the switch in this position.
- ▷ Tap the switch backwards past the resistance point.
  The sliding visor opens automatically. Tapping the switch again stops the operation.

You can close the sliding visor in a similar manner by pressing the switch forwards.

Panorama glass roof

When the sliding visor is open, proceed as described under Sliding visor.

For information on convenient operation via the remote control or door lock, refer to page 30 or 31.

Opening and closing the roof and sliding visor at the same time

Tap the switch twice in quick succession beyond the resistance point.
Tapping the switch again stops the operation.

Convenience functions

- ▷ With the roof open, press the switch twice:
  The roof is raised.
- ▷ With the roof open, tap the switch twice in the direction for opening:
  The roof is opened fully.

Comfort position

In the comfort position, the roof is not completely open, thus reducing wind noise in the passenger compartment.

Each time the panorama glass roof is opened or closed completely, it stops in the comfort position. If desired, continue the movement by pressing the switch.

After switching off the ignition

When the remote control is removed or the ignition is switched off, you can still operate the roof for approx. 1 minute as long as no door has been opened.

Pinch protection system

If the panorama glass roof or the sliding visor encounters an obstruction while closing from a position about two-thirds closed, or during closing from the raised position, the closing movement is interrupted and the panorama glass roof and the sliding visor are opened again slightly.

Despite the pinch protection system check and clear the roof's travel path prior to closing it, otherwise the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the roof would continue closing.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Closing without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, press the switch forward past the resistance point and hold it there. The roof closes without pinch protection.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

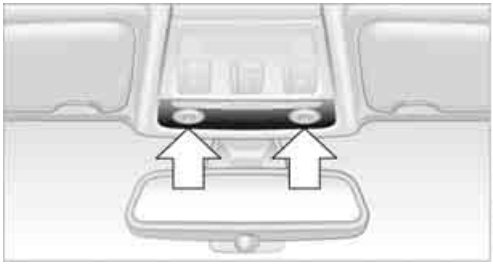
CarManuals2.com

After a power failure, there is a possibility that the panorama glass roof can only be raised. The system must be initialized. BMW recommends having this work done by your BMW center.

Closing manually*

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the panorama glass roof manually:

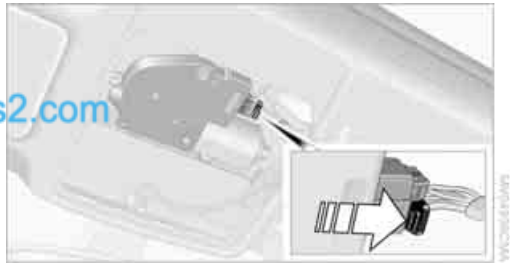
1. Unclip the front of the cover of the interior lamps using the screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 228.



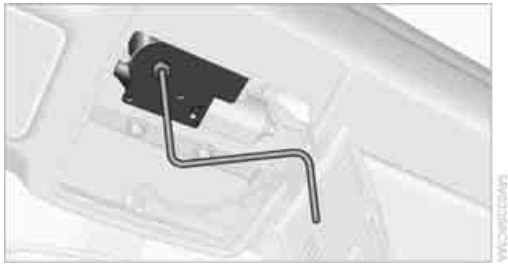
2. Insert the screwdriver into the openings on each side to press the clips.

3. Remove the control unit.

4. Unplug the motor. Considerably less effort will be required for manual operation.



5. Insert the Allen wrench* supplied with the onboard tool kit, refer to page 228, into the opening provided. Move the panorama glass roof in the desired direction.



6. Reinstall the control unit and reattach the lamp cover.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Adjustments

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In conjunction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the seated position has a major influence on your safety in the event of an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

CarManuals2.com

For additional information on transporting children safely, refer to page 52.

Airbags

Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always grip the steering wheel on the rim, with your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injury to the hands or arms in the event of the airbag being triggered off.
No one and nothing is to come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, e.g. not resting feet or legs on the dashboard, otherwise leg injuries can occur if the front airbag is triggered.
Make sure that passengers do not lean their heads against the side or head airbags, otherwise serious injuries could result if the airbags suddenly deployed.◀

Even if you follow all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 94.

Head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of neck injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint in such a way that its center is at approx. ear level. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Head restraints, refer to page 45.

Safety belt

Before every drive, make sure that all occupants wear their safety belts. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Your vehicle has five seats, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt in the lap area sits low across the hips and does not press against the abdomen.
The safety belt must not rest against the throat, run across sharp edges, pass over hard or fragile objects or be pinched. Fasten the safety belt so that it sits as snugly as possible against the lap and shoulder without being twisted. Otherwise the belt could slide over your hips and injure your abdomen in the event of a frontal collision.
Avoid wearing bulky clothing and regularly pull the belt in the upper-body area taut, otherwise its restraining effect could be impaired.
Sports Wagon: if the rear center safety belt is used, the wider backrest must be locked in place, refer to page 114. Otherwise the safety belt will have no restraining effect.◀

Safety belts, refer to page 48.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Seats

Note before adjusting

Never attempt to adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement, and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

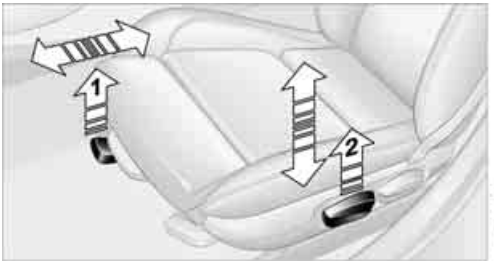
CarManuals2.com

On the front passenger seat as well, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven, otherwise there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

Comply with the instructions on head restraint height on page 45, and on damaged safety belts on page 49.

Manual adjustment

Observe the adjustment instructions on page 44 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀



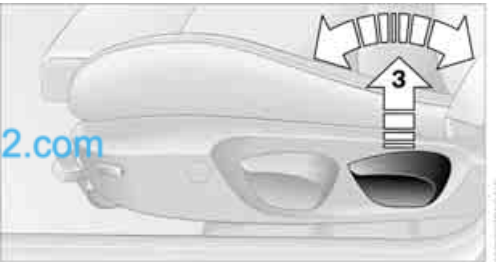
Longitudinal direction

Pull lever **1** and slide the seat to the desired position.
After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly.

Height

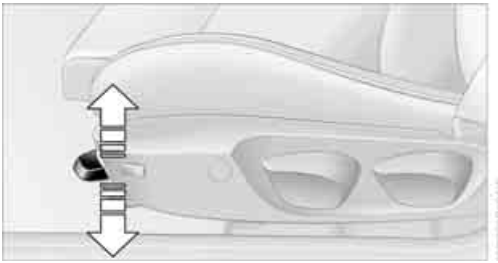
Pull lever **2** and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Backrest



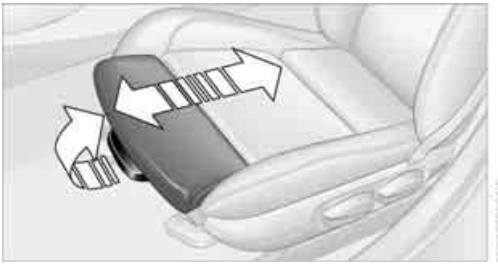
Pull lever **3** and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Tilt*



Pull the lever and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Thigh support*

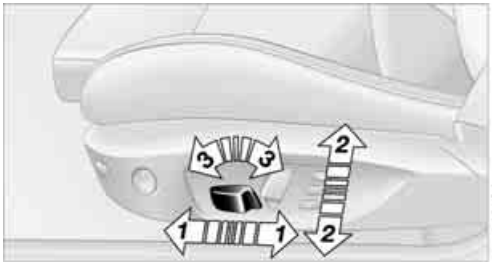


Pull the lever and move the thigh support forward or back.

Electrical adjustment

Observe the adjustment instructions on page 44 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG



1 Longitudinal direction

2 Height

3 Angle

4 Backrest

The head restraints are adjusted manually, refer to Head restraints below.

Lumbar support*

You can also adjust the contour of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

▷ Increase or decrease curvature: press the switch at the front or rear, respectively.

▷ Shift curvature up or down: press the switch at the top or bottom, respectively.

Backrest width*

You can change the width of the backrest to suit your individual preferences by adjusting the lateral-support pads.

Press the front or rear end of the switch. Backrest width decreases or increases accordingly.

Head restraints

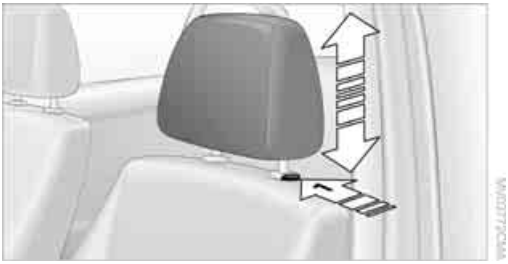
A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of neck injury in the event of an accident.

⚠ Adjust the head restraint in such a way that its center is at approx. ear level. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. Only remove a head restraint if no one will be sitting on the seat in question. Reinstall the head restraint before transporting anyone on that seat. Otherwise, the passenger will be without protection from the head restraint.◀

CarManuals2.com

Front seats

Height adjustment



▷ To raise: pull up.

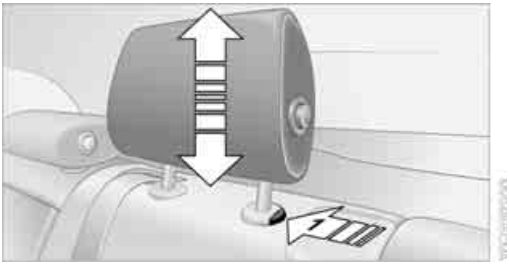
▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and slide the head restraint down.

Removing

1. Pull up as far as it will go.
2. Press the button, arrow **1**, and pull the head restraint all the way out.

Rear seats

Height adjustment



▷ To raise: pull up.

▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and slide the head restraint down.

The center head restraint is not height-adjustable.

Removing

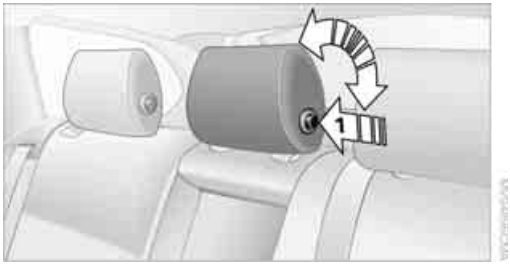
Sedan:
Only with through-loading system:

1. Pull up as far as it will go.
2. Press the button, arrow **1**, tilt the rear seat backrest slightly forward and pull the head restraint all the way out.

▷ Only remove the head restraints if no passengers will be sitting in the rear. Reinstall head restraints before transporting passengers in the rear.◀

CarManuals2.com

Folding head restraints down and back up



Folding down:
Press the button, arrow **1**.

Folding up:
Pull the head restraint.

Sedan:
Depending on the equipment version, it may be possible to fold down the outer rear head restraints as well.

▷ Only fold the head restraints down if no passengers will be sitting in the rear. Fold up the head restraints before transporting passengers in the rear.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Heated seats*

Press once for each temperature level.
Three LEDs indicate the highest temperature.

To switch off:
Press button longer.

If you continue driving within approx. the next 15 minutes, the seat heating is automatically activated at the previously set temperature.

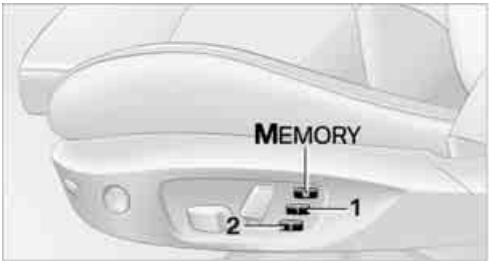
The temperature is lowered or the heating is switched off entirely to save on battery power. The LEDs stay lit.

Seat and mirror memory*

You can store and call up two different combinations of driver's-seat and exterior-mirror positions.

Settings for the backrest width and lumbar support are not stored in memory.

Storing



1. Switch on radio readiness or the ignition, refer to page 56.
2. Adjust the seat and exterior mirrors to the desired positions.
3. Press the M button.
   The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2**: the LED goes out.

   The driver's seat and exterior mirror positions are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Call-up

Do not call up memory while you are driving, otherwise unexpected seat movement could result in an accident.◀

Convenience mode

1. Unlock and open the driver's door or switch on radio readiness, refer to page 56.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button **1** or **2**.

The adjusting procedure is halted immediately when you touch a seat adjustment switch or one of the memory buttons.

Safety feature

1. Close the driver's door and switch the ignition on or off, refer to page 56.
2. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2** and keep it pressed until the adjustment process has been completed.

If the M button was pressed accidentally: Press the button again; the LED goes out.

Call-up with the remote control

The driver's seat position last stored is stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can select the occasion on which the seat is reset to that position.

▷ Call-up when the vehicle is unlocked.

▷ Call-up when the driver's door is opened.

When this Personal Profile function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is free of obstacles. Failure to do so could cause injury to persons or damage to objects as a result of a rearward movement of the seat.◀

CarManuals2.com

The adjusting procedure is halted immediately when you touch a seat adjustment switch or one of the memory buttons.

Selecting automatic call-up

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Last seat pos." and press the controller.
8. Select "After unlocking" or "After door opened".

9. Press the controller.

Switching off automatic call-up

Select "Deactivated" and press the controller.

Safety belts

Observe the adjustment instructions on page 44 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

Before every drive, make sure that all occupants wear their safety belts. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

On the rear seats, the center belt buckle marked with the letters CENTER is solely intended for the center passenger.

Closing

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

The upper belt anchor is suitable for adults of any stature as long as the seat is adjusted properly, refer to page 44.

Opening

1. Grasp the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

'Fasten safety belts' reminder for front seats

The indicator lamp comes on and an acoustic signal sounds. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display. Check whether the safety belt has been fastened correctly.

The 'Fasten safety belts' reminder is issued as long as the driver's safety belt has not been fastened. The 'Fasten safety belts' reminder is also activated at road speeds above approx. 5 mph or 8 km/h if the front passenger's safety belt is

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

not fastened, if objects are placed on the front passenger seat, or if driver or front passenger unfasten their safety belts.

Damage to safety belts

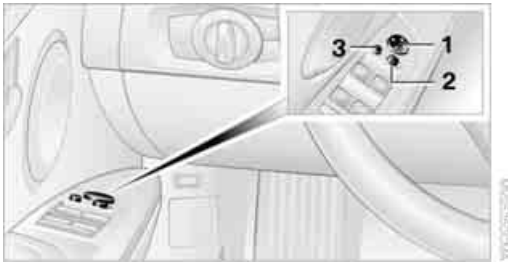
If the safety belts are damaged or stressed in an accident: have the belt system, including any belt tensioners or child-restraint systems, replaced and the belt anchors checked. Have this work done only by your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise, it is not guaranteed that the safety devices will function properly.◀

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

The front passenger's mirror is more convex than the driver's mirror. The objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not gauge your distance from traffic behind you on the basis of what you see in the mirror; otherwise there is an increased risk of an accident.◀

CarManuals2.com



1 Adjustments

2 Switching to the other mirror or automatic curb monitor*

3 Folding mirrors in and out*

The setting for the exterior mirrors is stored* for the remote control currently in use*. The stored position is called up automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

Manual adjustment

The mirrors can also be adjusted manually: press the edge of the glass.

Folding mirrors in and out*

At driving speeds up to approx. 12 mph/ 20 km/h, you can fold the mirrors in and out by pressing button **3**. This can be beneficial in narrow streets, for example, or for moving mirrors that were folded in by hand back out into their correct positions. Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Before entering an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors by hand or with button **3**, to prevent them from being damaged due to the width of the vehicle.◀

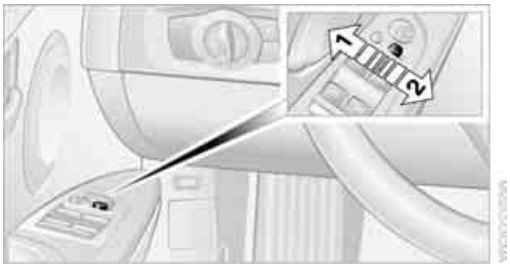
Automatic heating*

Both exterior mirrors are heated automatically while the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Passenger-side mirror tilt function – automatic curb monitor*

Activating

1. Push the switch to the position for the driver's-side mirror, arrow **1**.



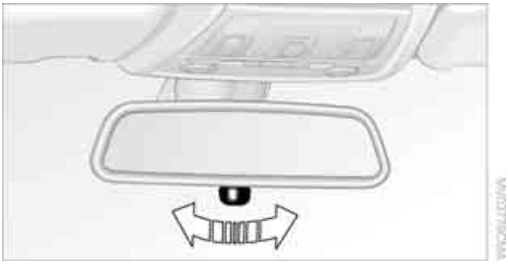
2. Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position R.
   The glass of the mirror on the passenger side tilts slightly down. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle, e.g. a curb, when backing into a parking space.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Deactivating

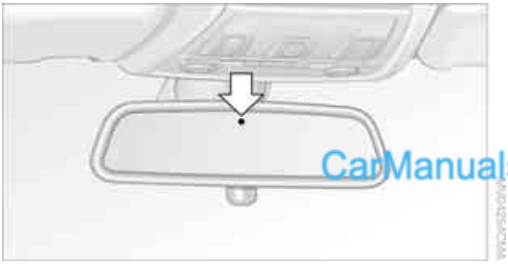
Push the switch to the position for the passenger-side mirror, arrow **2**.

Interior rearview mirror



Turn the knob to reduce glare from the headlamps of cars behind you when driving at night.

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature*



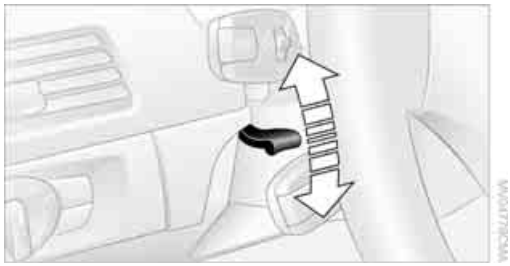
The automatic dimming feature of the interior and exterior mirrors* is controlled by two photo cells in the interior rearview mirror. One photo cell is in the mirror frame, see arrow; the other is on the back of the mirror.

In order to ensure that the system functions correctly, keep the photo cells clean, do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and windshield, and do not affix adhesive labels or stickers of any kind to the windshield directly in front of the mirror.

Steering wheel

Adjustments

Do not adjust the steering wheel position while the car is in motion, otherwise there is a risk of accident due to an unexpected movement.◀



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.
3. Swing the lever back up.

   Do not use force to swing the lever back up, otherwise the mechanism will be damaged.◀

CarManuals2.com

Programmable buttons on the steering wheel

You can program the buttons to suit your personal preferences:

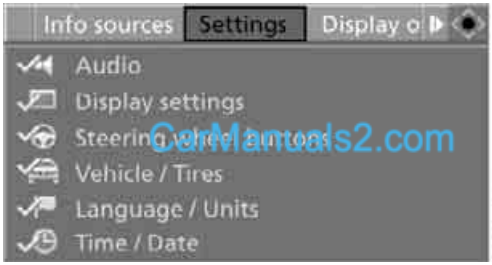
These settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

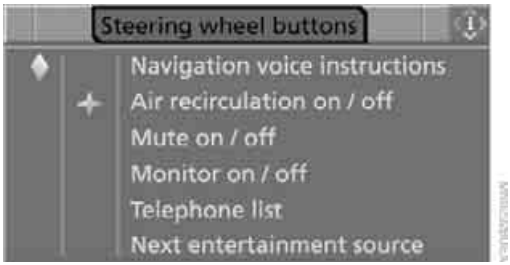
1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.



4. Select "Steering wheel buttons" and press the controller.

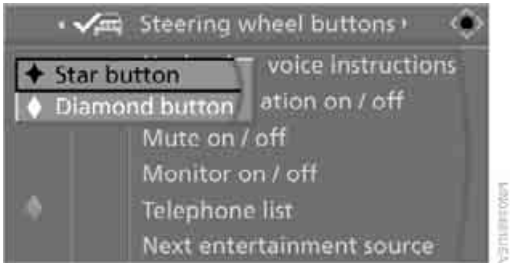


A list showing various functions is displayed:

- ▷ "Navigation voice instructions"
  Voice messages from the navigation system*
- ▷ "Air recirculation on / off"
  Permanent shut-off of outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control on page 102
- ▷ "Mute on / off"
  To mute the audio sources
- ▷ "Monitor on / off"
  To switch the Control Display on/off
- ▷ "Telephone list"*
  To show/hide the phone book or last displayed list of stored phone numbers
- ▷ "Next entertainment source"
  To change the audio source

5. Select the desired function and press the controller.

6. Select a button, if appropriate, and press the controller.



You can operate the selected function using the corresponding button.

Operating a function

Briefly press the appropriate button on the steering wheel.

If you have programmed "Navigation voice instructions" for one of the buttons:

- ▷ Switch voice instructions on/off:
  Press the button for a longer period.
- ▷ To repeat the last voice instruction:
  Press the button briefly.
- ▷ To cancel a voice instruction during an announcement:
  Press the button briefly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, otherwise they could endanger themselves and/or other persons by opening the doors, for example.◀

The rear center seat is not suitable for installing child-restraint systems for all age groups, approved for the age group in question.

Children always in the rear

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children under the age of 13 or smaller than 5 ft/150 cm may be transported only in the rear in suitable child-restraint systems appropriate for their age, weight and size. Otherwise there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must be buckled in with a safety belt as soon as there no longer is any child-restraint system that is appropriate for their age, size and weight.

Exception for front passenger seat

Should it be necessary to use a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags for the front passenger must be deactivated. Otherwise, a child traveling on that seat will face a significant risk of injury if the airbags are triggered off, even with a child-restraint system.◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags refer to page 94.

Installing child-restraint systems

Observe the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when selecting, installing and using child-restraint systems. Otherwise the protective effect may be diminished.◀

Standard child-restraint systems are designed to be secured with a lap belt or with the lap-belt section of a lap-and-shoulder belt. Incorrectly or improperly installed child-restraint systems can increase the risk of injury to children. Always follow the installation instructions for the system with the greatest care.

On the front passenger seat

After installing a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags for the front passenger are deactivated, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury if the airbags deploy.◀

Backrest width*

The backrest width of the front passenger's seat must be at its widest possible setting. Do not change the setting after installing the child seat. Otherwise the child seat's stability on the front passenger's seat is limited.◀

1. Adjust the backrest width to its widest setting, refer to page 45.
2. Install the child seat.

Child seat security

The rear safety belts and the front passenger's safety belt can be prevented from being pulled out in order to fasten child-restraint systems.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

To lock the safety belt

1. Secure the child-restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull the belt strap all the way out.
3. Allow the belt strap to retract and pull it taut against the child-restraint system.

The safety belt is locked.

To unlock the safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle
2. Remove the child-restraint system.
3. Allow the safety belt strap to retract all the way.

LATCH child-restraint fixing system

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren.

To install and use the LATCH child restraint system, follow the operating and safety instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system, otherwise the protective function of the seat may be compromised.◀

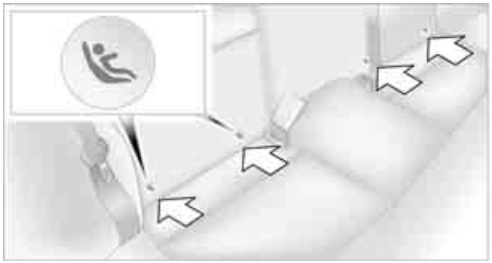
Before installing the child seat, pull the belt out of the area for the child-restraint fixing system.

Ensure that both lower LATCH anchors are correctly engaged and that the child restraint system is resting firmly against the backrest, otherwise the protective function of the seat may be compromised.◀

Rear seats with through-loading system

The anchor points for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the labeled protective caps.

Rear seats without through-loading system



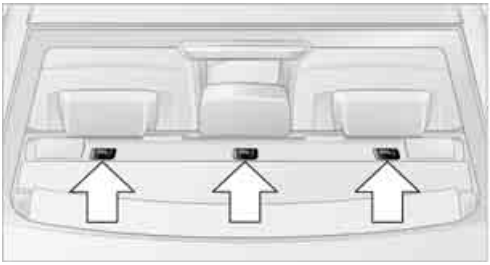
The anchor points for the lower LATCH anchors are located at the positions indicated by arrows, in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Child-restraint system with tether strap

Use the top tether anchors to secure child-restraint systems only, otherwise the anchors could be damaged.◀

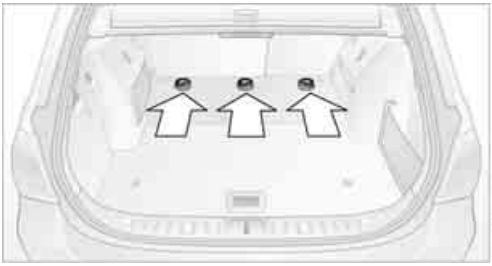
CarManuals2.com

Sedan



There are three additional anchors for child-restraint systems with tether straps, see arrows.

Sports Wagon



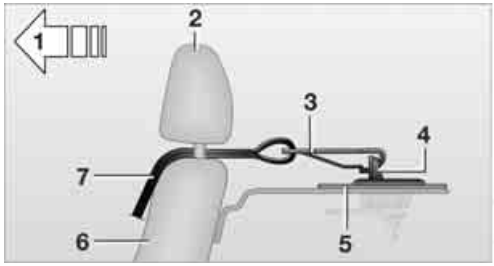
There are three additional anchors under a cover for child-restraint systems with tether straps, see arrows.

CarManuals2.com

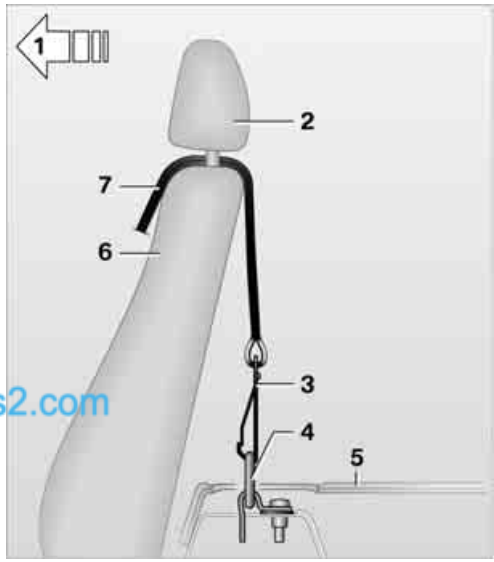
Placement of the tether strap

Make sure the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes to the top anchor. Otherwise the strap will not properly secure the child-restraint system in the event of an accident.◀

Sedan



Sports Wagon



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Anchor
5 Rear window shelf/cargo bay floor
6 Seat backrest
7 Upper retaining strap of child-restraint system

Fold the anchors and, if necessary, the head restraints* upward before use.

1. Push the head restraint upward.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint holders.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Use the hook to clip the retaining strap to the anchor.
4. Push the head restraint into its lowermost position.
5. Pull the retaining strap taut.

On journeys

Child-safety locks for rear doors

Slide down the safety lever on the rear door:

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for power windows

Press the safety switch for the power windows, refer to page 39, if children are traveling on the rear seat.

CarManuals2.com

Driving

Ignition lock

Insert the remote control into the ignition lock

Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

▷ Radio readiness is switched on. Individual electrical consumers can operate.

Convenient access*

If the car is equipped with convenient access, only insert the remote control into the ignition lock under special circumstances, refer to page 36.

Removing the remote control from the ignition lock

⚠ Do not forcibly pull the remote control out of the ignition lock as this may cause damage.◀

Before removing the remote control, push it all the way in to release the locking mechanism.

▷ The ignition is switched off if it was on.

Automatic transmission

You cannot take out the remote control unless the selector lever is in the P position: interlock.

Start/stop button

Pressing the start/stop button switches radio readiness or the ignition on or off.

▷ The engine is started when you press the start/stop button and depress the clutch if the car has manual transmission, or the brake if the car has automatic transmission.◀

Radio readiness

Individual electrical consumers can operate. The time and the outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

CarManuals2.com

Radio readiness is switched off automatically:

▷ When the remote control is removed from the ignition lock

▷ In cars with convenient access*, by touching the surface above the door lock, refer to Locking on page 37

Ignition on

All electrical consumers can operate. The odometer and trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster.

▷ When the engine is off, please switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electrical consumers in order to preserve the battery.◀

Radio readiness and ignition off

All indicator and warning lamps as well as displays in the instrument cluster go out.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Starting the engine

Do not run the engine in closed rooms, otherwise the inhalation of toxic exhaust gases can cause unconsciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas. Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running, otherwise such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard.
Before leaving the car with the engine running, place the transmission in idle or move the selector lever to position P and forcefully apply the parking brake to prevent the car from moving.◀

Avoid frequent starting in quick succession as well as repeated start attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or incompletely burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◀

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

Manual transmission

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with convenient access, inside the vehicle, refer to page 36.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Depress the clutch and shift to idle position.
3. Press the start/stop button.

The starter operates automatically for a certain time, and stops automatically as soon as the engine has started.

Automatic transmission

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with convenient access, inside the vehicle, refer to page 36.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Move the selector lever to position P.
3. Press the start/stop button.

The starter operates automatically for a certain time, and stops automatically as soon as the engine has started.

Switching off the engine

Always take the remote control with you when you leave the vehicle.
When parking, apply the parking brake forcefully, otherwise the vehicle could begin to roll.◀

Manual transmission

1. With the car at a standstill, press the start/stop button.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Forcefully apply the parking brake.
4. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 56.

Automatic transmission

1. With the car at a standstill, move the selector lever to position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.
3. Forcefully apply the parking brake.
4. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 56.

Parking brake

The parking brake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

CarManuals2.com

Indicator lamp

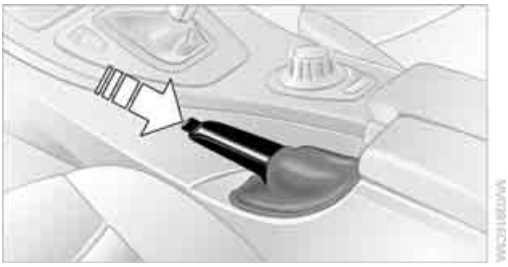
The indicator lamp is lit, and when you drive off an acoustic signal sounds in addition. The parking brake is still applied.

Indicator lamp for Canadian models.

Applying

The lever locks in position automatically.

Releasing



Pull slightly upwards, press the button and lower the lever.

In exceptional cases, if the parking brake has to be used to slow or stop the car, do not pull the lever up too hard. In doing so, continuously press the button of the parking brake lever.
Otherwise, excessive force on the parking brake can lock up the rear wheels and cause the rear of the car to swerve.◀

To prevent corrosion and one-sided braking action, occasionally apply the parking brake lightly when the vehicle is slowly coming to a stop if the traffic conditions are suitable. The brake lamps do not light up when the parking brake is applied.◀

CarManuals2.com

Manual transmission

When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right. Otherwise the engine could be damaged if you inadvertently shift into 3rd or 4th gear.◀

Reverse gear

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. When the gearshift lever is pressed to the left, a slight resistance has to be overcome.

Automatic transmission with Steptronic*

In addition to fully automatic operation, you can also manually shift with the Steptronic, refer to page 59.

Vehicle parking

To prevent the vehicle from rolling, always select position P and apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle with the engine running.◀

Disengaging the remote control

In order to remove the remote control from the ignition lock, you must first move the selector lever to position P and switch off the engine: interlock. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 56.

Selector lever positions

P R N D M/S + –

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Displays in the instrument cluster

P R N D DS M1 to M6

The selector lever position is displayed, or the current gear in the manual mode.

Changing selector lever positions

▷ With the ignition switched on or the engine running, the selector lever can be moved out of position P: interlock.

▷ Before moving the lever away from P or N with the vehicle stationary, first depress the brake; otherwise the selector lever will refuse to move: shiftlock.

⚠ To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, depress the brake until you are ready to start.◀

CarManuals2.com

A lock prevents you from inadvertently engaging selector lever positions R and P. To cancel the lock, press the button on the front of the selector lever, see arrow.

P Park

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. The rear wheels are locked.

R Reverse

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral, idle

You can select this in a car wash, for example. The vehicle can roll.

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are selected automatically.

Under normal operating conditions, fuel consumption is lowest when you are driving in position D.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables you to achieve maximum performance.
Press the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle resistance point.

Sport program and manual operation M/S

Move selector lever from position D toward the left into the M/S shifting slot:
The sport program is activated and DS is displayed on the instrument cluster. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

To use the automatic mode again, move the selector lever to the right into position D.

Shifting gears via the selector lever

When you press the selector lever forwards or backwards, the manual mode is activated and Steptronic changes gear. M1 through M6 are displayed on the instrument cluster.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

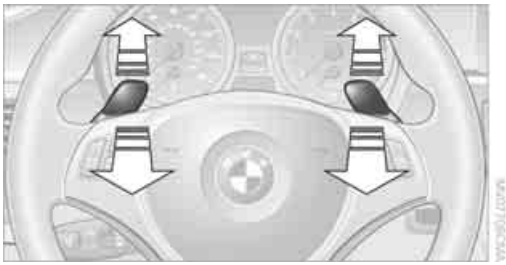
Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system. The gear selected is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the gear actually in use.

Shifting gears via shift paddles* on the steering wheel

The shift paddles allow you to shift gears quickly since both hands can remain on the steering wheel.

- When you use the shift paddles on the steering wheel to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission switches to manual mode.
- If you do not accelerate or shift gears using the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

If the selector lever is in the M/S gear plane, manual mode remains active.◀



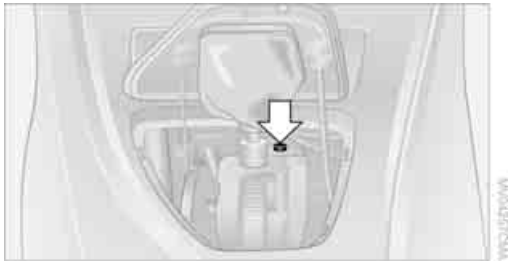
- To shift up: pull one of the shift paddles.
- To shift down: press one of the shift paddles.

Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system. The gear selected is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the gear actually in use.

Overriding selector lever lock

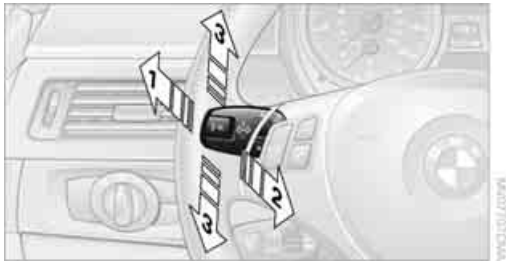
Should the selector lever refuse to move out of position P although the button on the selector lever is pressed, the selector lever lock can be overridden:

1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve up over the selector lever until the sleeve is inside out.



3. Using the screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 228, press the red lever while moving the selector lever to the desired position.

Turn signals/ headlamp flasher



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Turn signals

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To turn off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal indicator has failed.◀

Indicating a turn briefly

Press the lever as far as the resistance point for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

CarManuals2.com

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever as far as the resistance point. The turn signals flash three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

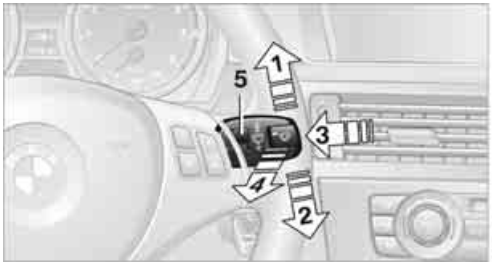
1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Triple turn signal" and press the controller.

   Triple turn signaling is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Wiper system



1 Switching on wipers
2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe
3 Activating/deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor*
4 Cleaning windshield and headlamps*
5 Setting speed for intermittent wipe, or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Switching on wipers

Press the lever upward, arrow **1**.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.

The system switches to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.
The system switches to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

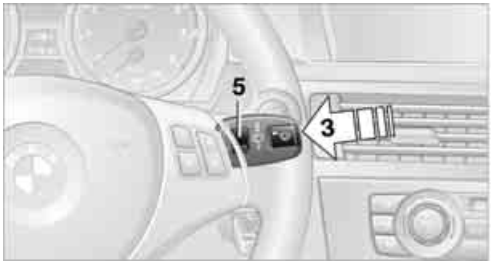
Intermittent wipe or rain sensor*

If the car is not equipped with a rain sensor, the intermittent-wipe time is a preset.

If the car is equipped with a rain sensor, the time between wipes is controlled automatically and depends on the intensity of the rainfall. The rain sensor is mounted on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Activating intermittent wipe or rain sensor



Press the button, arrow **3**. The LED in the button lights up.

Setting speed for intermittent wipe or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn knurled wheel **5** up or down.

Deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**.
The LED goes out.

Deactivate the rain sensor before entering an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper activation.◀

Cleaning windshield and headlamps*

Pull the lever, arrow **4**.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield and the wipers are operated for a short time.

When the vehicle lighting system is switched on, the headlamps are cleaned at regular and appropriate intervals.

Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do, your vision could be obscured. Antifreeze should therefore be added to the fluid, refer to Washer fluid.
Do not use the washers when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are heated automatically while the engine is running or the ignition is switched on*.

Sports Wagon: rear window wiper

1 Intermittent operation. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

2 Cleaning the rear window

The rear window wiper does not move if the lever is in position 1 before the ignition is switched on.

To switch on the rear window wiper:

1. Move the lever to its home position.
2. Reselect the desired position.

Do not use the washers when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

Washer fluid

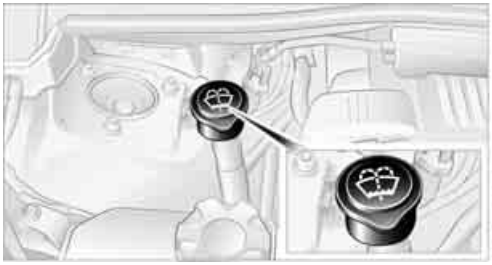
Washer fluid antifreeze is flammable. Therefore, keep it away from ignition sources and only store it in the closed original container that is kept out of reach of children, otherwise there is a risk of personal injury. Comply with the instructions on the container.◀

Washer fluid filler neck

Only refill washer fluid when the engine is cool to avoid contact with hot engine parts. Otherwise, fluid spills constitute a fire hazard and a risk to personal safety.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG



All washer nozzles are supplied with washer fluid by the same reservoir.

Fill with water and, if required, with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

▷ Mix the water and antifreeze before filling the washer fluid reservoir to make sure the correct concentration is maintained.◀

Capacity

Approx. 6.3 US quarts/6 liters.

Cruise control*

The concept

CarManuals2.com

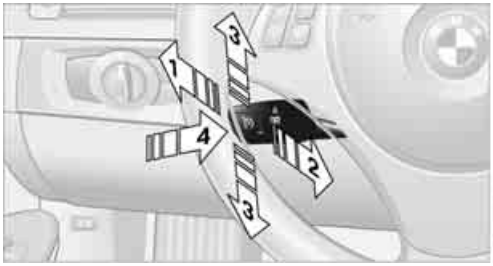
Cruise control is available for use at speeds of approx. 20 mph or 30 km/h. The car then stores and maintains the speed that you specify using the lever on the steering column. In order to maintain the specified speed, the system brakes the vehicle when the engine braking effect is insufficient on downhill gradients.

⚠ Do not use cruise control when driving at constant speed is prevented by adverse conditions, e.g. winding roads, dense traffic or poor road conditions due to, e.g., snow, rain, ice or loose surfaces. Otherwise you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident as a result.◀

Manual transmission

You can shift gears while cruise control is activated. An indicator lamp notifies you that you should shift gears when you drive for an extended period at very high or very low engine speeds, or the system is deactivated.

One lever for all functions



1 Storing and maintaining speed or accelerating

2 Storing and maintaining speed or decelerating

3 Deactivating cruise control

4 Resuming a speed stored beforehand

Maintaining current speed

Tap the lever, arrow **1**, or pull it briefly, arrow **2**. The car's current speed is stored and maintained. It is displayed on the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

On uphill gradients, it may prove impossible to maintain the set speed if current engine power output is insufficient. If the engine braking effect is insufficient on downhill slopes, the system will brake the vehicle slightly.

Increasing desired speed

Repeatedly press the lever to the resistance point or beyond, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is reached.

▷ Each time the lever is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased by approx. 1 mph or 1 km/h.

▷ Each time the lever is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is increased by up to 5 mph or 10 km/h.

The system stores and maintains the speed.

Accelerating using the lever

Accelerating slightly:

Press the lever to the resistance point, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is reached.

Accelerating significantly:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Press the lever beyond the resistance point, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is reached.

The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system stores and maintains the speed.

Decreasing speed

Repeatedly pull the lever to the resistance point or beyond, arrow **2**, until the desired speed is displayed.

- ▷ Each time the lever is pulled to the resistance point, the desired speed is decreased by approx. 1 mph or 1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the lever is pulled beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is reduced by up to 5 mph or 10 km/h until the minimum speed of 20 mph or 30 km/h is achieved.

The system stores and maintains the speed.

Deactivating cruise control

Tap the lever upwards or downwards, arrow **3**. The displays on the speedometer disappear.

In addition, the system is automatically deactivated:

- ▷ When you brake the vehicle
- ▷ When you switch gears very slowly or shift to idle in cars with manual transmission
- ▷ When you select the automatic transmission's neutral position N
- ▷ When you activate DTC or deactivate DSC
- ▷ When DSC or ABS is intervening

Cruise control is not deactivated by depressing the accelerator pedal. Once the accelerator pedal is released, the stored speed is achieved again and maintained.

Warning lamp

The warning lamp comes on when cruise control has been deactivated by applying the parking brake or as a result of DSC intervention. A message appears on the Control Display.

Resuming a speed stored beforehand

Press the button, arrow **4**. The last stored speed is resumed and maintained.

In the following instances, the stored speed is deleted and can no longer be resumed:

- ▷ When driving stability control systems are intervening
- ▷ In cars with manual transmission: when you shift gears very slowly or shift to idle position
- ▷ In cars with automatic transmission: when you engage selector lever position N
- ▷ When the ignition is switched off

Displays in the instrument cluster

1 Stored speed

2 Selected speed is displayed briefly

▷ If --- mph or --- km/h temporarily appears in the instrument cluster display, it is possible that the system prerequisites for operation are currently not met.
Calling up Check Control messages, refer to page 82.◀

Malfunction

The warning lamp comes on when the system has failed. A message appears on the Control Display. You can find more information starting on page 81.

Active cruise control*

CarManuals2.com

The concept

With active cruise control, you can select a desired speed which is not only automatically

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

maintained when driving on open roadways, but also varied to maintain a selected distance setting as slower traffic is encountered.

Active cruise control is a technological advance over the familiar cruise control and is a welcome relief from the constant adjustment of speed that can accompany driving in traffic on highways or other high-speed thoroughfares. Especially on longer trips, the system can reduce fatigue and tension, while increasing your enjoyment of driving. Please use it safely and responsibly.

Within the limits of its capability, the system automatically adapts the car's speed to that of a slower vehicle in front of you. You can specify the distance to be maintained from the vehicle in front in four stages. For safety reasons, the distance is speed-dependent. Based on your selected distance setting, the system automatically decreases the throttle setting and lightly applies the brakes if necessary. The vehicle brake lamps will automatically illuminate to signal a following driver to take action. In addition, it may be necessary for the vehicle or the driver to downshift, depending on the kind of transmission your vehicle is equipped with, to maintain the distance setting selected. If the vehicle ahead speeds up or when the lane ahead becomes clear, your vehicle will accelerate to the speed you have selected by increasing the throttle setting and shifting gears automatically or by the driver as needed. Your selected speed will be held when driving downhill, too.

Since this active cruise control system is a new technology and operates differently from conventional cruise control systems which you may be accustomed to, you are strongly urged to read all of the pages relating to this system before use. Pay special attention to the System limitations section beginning on page 68.

Braking sensation

- ▷ If you step on the brake pedal while the system is braking, pedal sensation will be slightly different from the usual.
- ▷ Possible noises during automatic braking are normal.

Manual transmission

You can shift gears while cruise control is activated. An indicator lamp notifies you that you should shift gears when you drive for an extended period at very high or very low engine speeds, or the system is deactivated.

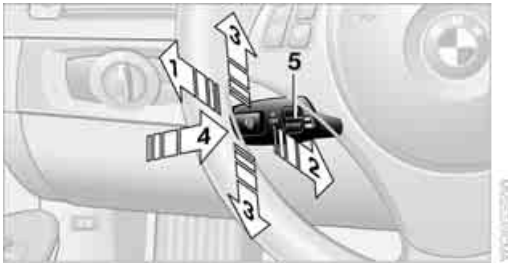
Range of applications

The minimum desired speed is 20 mph or 30 km/h, the maximum desired speed is 110 mph or 180 km/h.

⚠ As with conventional cruise control systems, active cruise control in no way diminishes or substitutes for the driver's own personal responsibility, alertness and awareness in adjusting speed, braking or otherwise controlling the vehicle. The driver should decide when to use the system on the basis of road, traffic, visibility, and weather conditions. Active cruise control is intended for use on highway-type roadways where traffic is moving relatively smoothly. Do not use this system in city driving; heavy traffic such as during rush hour; on curvy, winding roads, slippery roads or roads with sharp curves such as highway off-ramps; during inclement weather such as snow, strong rain or fog; or when entering interchanges, service/parking areas or toll booths. It is also important to regulate your vehicle's speed and distance setting within applicable legal limits. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary, especially when the system is actively following a vehicle in front of you. Otherwise driving situations could result that pose the risk of accidents.◀

CarManuals2.com

One lever for all functions



1 Store and increase desired speed
2 Store and decrease desired speed
3 Deactivate system, refer to page 67
4 Resume stored desired speed and distance, refer to page 67
5 Select distance to vehicle driving ahead, refer to page 66

Storing current speed

Briefly press the lever, arrow **1**, or briefly pull it, arrow **2**, at a driving speed of more than approx. 20 mph or 30 km/h.

The car's current speed is stored. It is displayed on the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

Increasing desired speed

Press or tap the lever to the resistance point or beyond, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is displayed.

▷ Each time the lever is tapped to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased by approx. 1 mph or 1 km/h.

▷ Each time the lever is tapped beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is increased by up to 5 mph or 10 km/h until the maximum speed of 110 mph or 180 km/h is achieved.

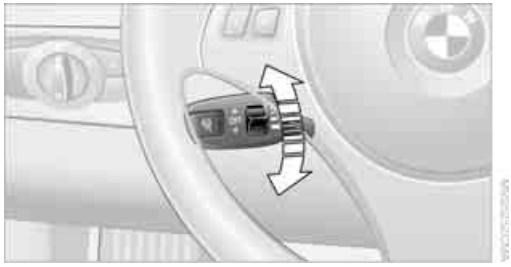
The speed then displayed is stored and achieved on a clear road.

Decreasing desired speed

Pull the lever, arrow **2**, until the desired speed is displayed.

The other functions work analogously to those described under Increasing desired speed.

Selecting distance



▷ Press downward:
Increase distance

▷ Press upward:
Decrease distance.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Distance 1

Distance 2

Distance 3
This distance is always set when the system is used for the first time after starting the engine.

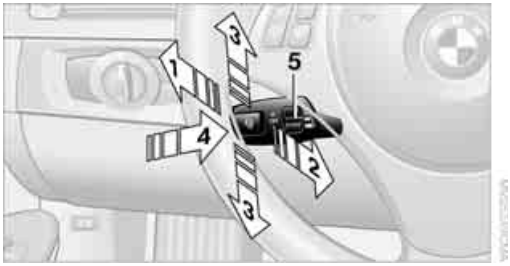
Distance 4

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Use good judgment to select the appropriate following distance given road conditions, traffic, applicable laws and driving recommendations for safe following distance. Otherwise, an accident risk could result.◀

Deactivating cruise control



Press the lever upward or downward, arrow **3**. The displays on the speedometer disappear.

In addition, the system is automatically deactivated:

- ▷ When you brake the vehicle
- ▷ When the speed is reduced to below 20 mph or 30 km/h due to a traffic situation
- ▷ When you switch gears very slowly or shift to idle in cars with manual transmission
- ▷ When you select the automatic transmission's neutral position N
- ▷ When you activate the Dynamic Traction Control DTC
- ▷ When you deactivate the Dynamic Stability Control DSC
- ▷ When DSC or ABS is intervening
- ▷ When the system does not recognize any objects for a longer period of time, e.g. on infrequently traveled roads without a shoulder or guard rails, or if the radar sensor is covered with dirt, refer to page 68
- ▷ When you apply the parking brake

CarManuals2.com

When the system is deactivated, you must brake the vehicle yourself and/or maneuver as necessary, otherwise there is a risk of accident.◀

Warning lamp

The warning lamp comes on when active cruise control has been automatically deactivated due to a driving speed below 20 mph or 30 km/h, an application of the parking brake or a DSC intervention. A message appears on the Control Display.

Resuming stored desired speed and distance

Briefly press the button, arrow **4**.
The stored speed and distance are regained and maintained.

In the following instances, the stored speed is deleted and can no longer be resumed:

- ▷ When driving stability control systems are intervening
- ▷ In cars with manual transmission: when you shift gears very slowly or shift to idle position
- ▷ In cars with automatic transmission: when you engage selector lever position N
- ▷ When the ignition is switched off

Displays in the instrument cluster

1 Stored desired speed

2 Shows yellow: vehicle detected ahead

Flashes in red: system cannot maintain distance; driver must brake the vehicle

Flashes in yellow: driving stability control systems are intervening; cruise control is deactivated

3 Selected distance to vehicle ahead
The indicator lights up as soon as the system is activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4 Selected desired speed is temporarily displayed

If --- mph or --- km/h temporarily appears in the instrument cluster display, it is possible that the system prerequisites for operation are currently not met. Calling up Check Control messages, refer to page 82.◀

Warning lamps

The indicator **2** flashes in red; a signal sounds.
The system indicates that you must brake and/or maneuver the vehicle yourself. Active cruise control cannot automatically restore the distance to the vehicle ahead.
This indicator does not release you from your responsibility to adapt your desired speed and driving style to prevailing driving conditions.

The indicator **2** flashes in yellow. The prerequisites for operating active cruise control are not met, e.g. as a result of ABS or DSC interventions. Active cruise control is deactivated. You can reactivate the system, if desired, by tapping or pulling the lever when road and traffic conditions permit. It is not possible to resume a stored speed.

CarManuals2.com

Radar sensor

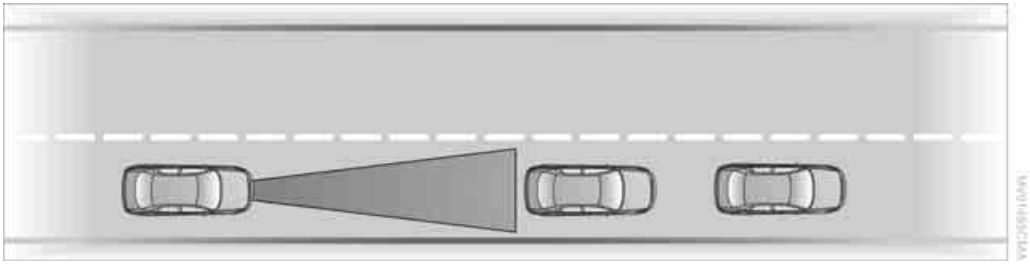
The sensor's ability to detect vehicles ahead may be restricted as a result of heavy rain, dirt, snow or ice. If necessary, clean the radar sensor located in the front bumper, see arrow. Be sure to use particular care when removing any layers of snow or ice from the sensor.

When the radar sensor is not properly positioned, active cruise control cannot be activated at all.

Malfunction

The warning lamp comes on when the system has failed. A message appears on the Control Display. You can find more information starting on page 81.

System limitations



Always remember that the range and ability of the system does have physical limitations. It will not apply the brakes or decelerate your vehicle when there is a slow-moving vehicle, stopped vehicle or stationary object ahead of you, as for example, at a traffic light or a parked vehicle. Also, the system does not react to oncoming traffic, pedestrians or other types of potential traffic such as a rider on horseback. It is also possible that the system may not detect smaller moving objects such as motorcycles or bicycles. Be especially alert when encountering any of these situations as the system will neither automatically brake, nor provide

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

a warning to you. Also, be aware that every decrease in the distance setting allows your vehicle to come closer to a vehicle in front of you and requires a heightened amount of alertness.◀

Active cruise control is not and must not be used as a collision avoidance/warning system.◀

If while your vehicle is actively following a vehicle in front of you and the vehicle ahead speeds up or the lane ahead becomes clear, then your vehicle will accelerate to the speed you have selected. Be aware that changing to a clear, unobstructed lane will also result in your vehicle accelerating.

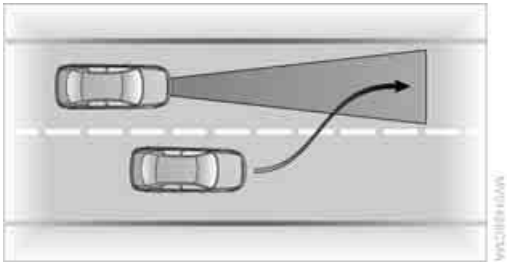
Be certain to deactivate the system when you pull into an exit lane for a highway off-ramp.◀

Also, vehicles traveling in a staggered manner on a highway may cause a delay in the system's reaction to a vehicle in front of you or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in the lane next to you. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary.

While active cruise control is capable of braking your vehicle automatically when you approach a slower vehicle ahead, it is important to be aware that the ability of the system to apply the brakes is also limited, e.g. when you reduce your desired speed sharply. The system cannot stop your vehicle. It uses only a portion of braking system capacity and does not utilize the full capacity of the vehicle braking system. Therefore, the system cannot decrease your speed for large differences in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. Examples: when you approach a vehicle traveling at a much lower speed than your own speed such as approaching a toll booth or when a much slower vehicle cuts in front of you at close range.◀

Active cruise control can only decelerate the vehicle to approx. 20 mph or 30 km/h.

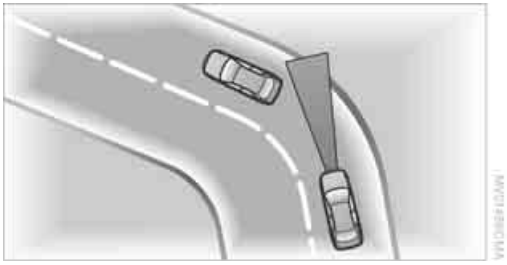
Swerving vehicles



When a vehicle moves from an adjacent lane into your lane, active cruise control will not recognize this vehicle until it is fully in your lane ahead of your vehicle.

When a vehicle ahead suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to maintain the selected distance automatically. This also applies to great differences in speed between you and vehicles ahead, e.g. when quickly approaching a truck. There is a risk of collision. Once the system has established that a vehicle is indeed in front of you, it will indicate that you must brake and/or maneuver the vehicle yourself. Take action yourself, otherwise there is a risk of an accident.◀

Behavior in curves



Because of the limited range of the system, it is possible that in curves or on the peaks and valleys of hilly roads, a vehicle ahead may be recognized late, or not at all. Therefore, it is up to the driver to select a speed that is prudent in view of the curves and terrain of the roadway.

CarManuals2.com

In approaching a curve, it is possible that active cruise control would react briefly to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. In addition, the system can sense if your vehicle is in a curve and may not accelerate. If your vehicle decelerates in either case, you can choose to overcome the deceleration by briefly pressing the accelerator pedal.

Your responsibility

Your actions have priority at all times. When you press the accelerator pedal while driving with active cruise control, the automatic braking function will be temporarily interrupted. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the desired speed or the selected distance to the vehicle ahead is achieved again.

⚠ Do not leave your foot on the accelerator pedal and make sure that no objects such as floor mats are lying on the accelerator pedal. Otherwise the system may not be able to brake the vehicle.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Everything under control

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock

CarManuals2.com

1 Knob in the instrument cluster

2 Outside temperature display and clock

3 Odometer and trip odometer

Knob in the instrument cluster

▷ To reset the trip odometer while the ignition is switched on

▷ To display the time, outside temperature and odometer briefly while the ignition is switched off

Units of measure

To select the respective units of measure, miles or km for the odometer as well as °F or °C for the outside temperature, refer to page 76.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Time, outside temperature display

Setting the time, refer to page 79.

Outside temperature warning

When the displayed temperature sinks to approx. +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. There is an increased risk of black ice.

⚠ Black ice can also form at temperatures above +37 °F /+3 °C. You should therefore drive carefully on bridges and shaded roads, for example, otherwise there is an increased risk of an accident.◀

Odometer and trip odometer

Resetting trip odometer:
With the ignition switched on, press button **1** in the instrument cluster.

When the vehicle is parked

If you still want to view the time, outside temperature and odometer reading briefly after the remote control has been taken out of the ignition lock:
Press button **1** in the instrument cluster.

Tachometer

Never force the engine speed up into the red warning field, see arrow. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Coolant temperature

A warning lamp will come on if the coolant, and therefore the engine, becomes too hot. In addition, a message will appear on the Control Display.

Check coolant level, refer to page 225.

Energy Control*

Displays the current fuel consumption. This allows you to see whether your current driving style is conducive to fuel economy with minimum exhaust emissions.

Engine oil temperature*

When the engine is at normal operating temperature, the engine oil temperature is between approx. 210 °F /100 °C and approx. 300 °F / 150 °C.

If the engine oil temperature is too high, a message appears on the Control Display.

CarManuals2.com

Fuel gauge

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 15.9 US gallons/ 60 liters.

You can find information on refueling on page 207.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Reserve

Once the fuel level has fallen to the reserve zone, a message briefly appears on the Control Display and the cruising range for the remaining amount of fuel is displayed on the computer. Under a cruising range of approx. 30 miles/ 50 km, the message remains in the Control Display.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Computer

Displays in the instrument cluster

Calling up information

Press the button in the turn indicator lever.

The following items of information are displayed in the order listed:

- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption
- ▷ Current fuel consumption*
- ▷ No information

To set the corresponding units of measure, refer to Units of measure on page 76.

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is calculated on the basis of the way the car has been driven over the last 18 miles/30 km and the amount of fuel currently in the tank.

⚠ Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Average speed

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

With the trip computer, refer to page 74, you can have the average speed for another trip displayed.

To reset average speed: press the button in the turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

With the trip computer, refer to page 74, you can have the average consumption for another trip displayed.

To reset average fuel consumption: press the button in the turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

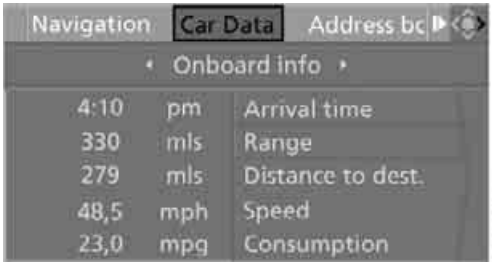
Current fuel consumption*

Displays the current fuel consumption. This allows you to see whether your current driving style is conducive to fuel economy with minimum exhaust emissions.

Displays on the Control Display

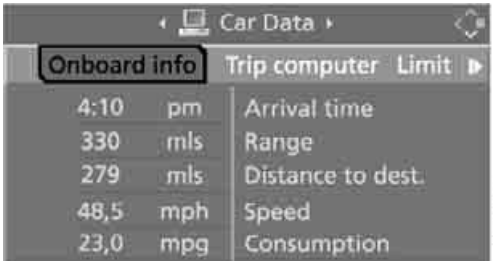
You can also call up the computer via iDrive; for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to call up "Navigation".
3. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Car Data" is selected and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

4. Select "Onboard info" and press the controller.



▷ Estimated time of arrival at destination:
  ▷ Manually enter a distance in the computer, refer to information further below
  ▷ Enter a destination in the navigation system, refer to page 130
▷ Cruising range
▷ Distance to destination:
  ▷ Manually enter a distance in the computer, refer to information further below
  ▷ Enter a destination in the navigation system, refer to page 130
▷ Average speed
▷ Average fuel consumption

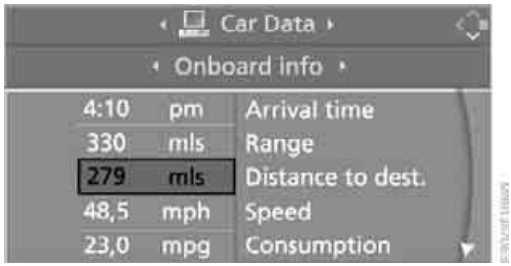
Resetting values

You can reset the values for average speed and average consumption:

1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. Press the controller again to confirm your selection.

Entering a distance manually

1. Select "Distance to dest." and press the controller.



2. Turn the controller to select the distance to your destination.
3. Press the controller to apply the setting.

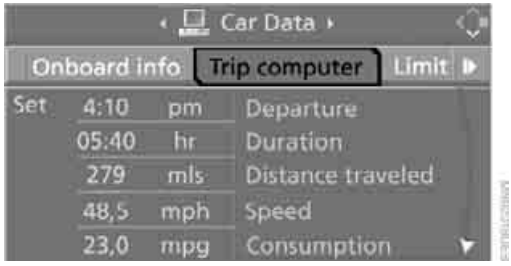
The distance is automatically entered during destination guidance.

Trip computer

The trip computer is suitable e.g. for a holiday trip.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Call up "Navigation".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Trip computer" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



▷ Departure time
▷ Driving time
▷ Distance traveled
▷ Average speed
▷ Average fuel consumption

Switching trip computer on/off and resetting all values to zero:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item and press the controller.

Display options

You can display the computer or the trip computer in the assistance window.

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Onboard info"
   - ▷ "Trip computer"
3. Press the controller.

Settings and information

Operating principle

CarManuals2.com

1 Button for:
- ▷ Selecting display
- ▷ Setting values

2 Button for:
- ▷ Confirming selected display or set values
- ▷ Calling up computer information 73

3 When the lights are on: instrument lighting brightness 99

Exiting displays

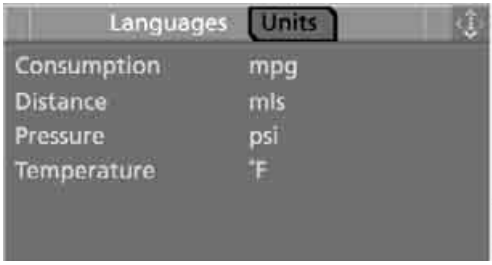
The outside-temperature reading and the time reappear when you press button **2** or if you make no entries within approx. 15 seconds. If required, complete the current setting first.

Units of measure

You can set units of measure.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Units" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select the desired menu item and press the controller.
7. Select the desired measurement unit and press the controller.
   The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

4 Calling up Check Control 81

5 Checking engine oil level 222

6 Setting the time 79

7 Setting the date 80

8 Viewing service requirement display 76

Service requirements

The remaining driving distance and the date of the next scheduled service are displayed briefly immediately after you start the engine or switch on the ignition.

▷ The extent of service work required can be read out from the remote control by your BMW Service Advisor.◀

For certain maintenance operations, you can view the respective distance remaining or due date individually in the instrument cluster.

1. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 56.
2. Push button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the words "SERVICE-INFO".
3. Press button **2**.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Use button **1** to scroll through the individual service items.

Possible displays

1 Button for selecting functions

2 Service requirements

3 Engine oil

4 Roadworthiness test*

5 Front brake pads

6 Rear brake pads

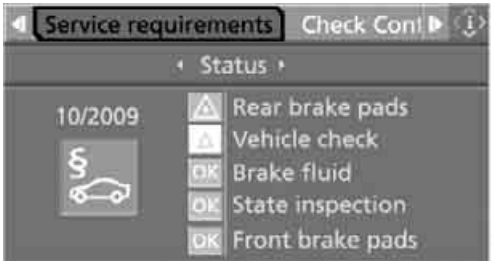
7 Brake fluid

The sequence of displayed service items may vary. The data for the next service appointment is shown first.

Supplementary information

You can have further information on the scope of maintenance displayed on the Control Display, refer to page 16.

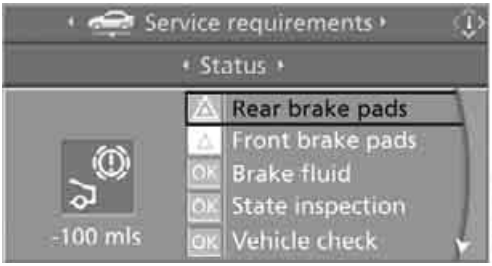
1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service Info" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



6. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the second field from the top. Turn the con-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

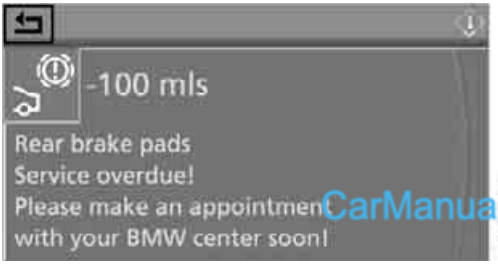
troller until "Status" is selected and press the controller.



A list of selected maintenance operations and, if applicable, inspections required by law is displayed.

You can request more detailed information on every entry:

Select the entry and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

To exit from the menu:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

Symbols

OK No service is currently required.

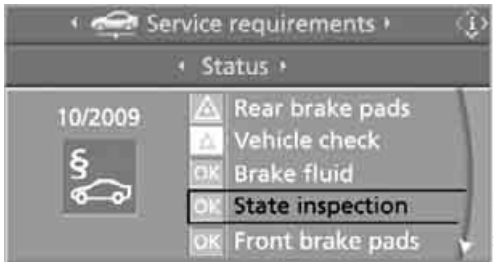
The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. Please schedule a service appointment.

The service deadline has already passed.

Entering deadlines for legally required inspections*

Make sure the date on the Control Display is always set correctly, refer to page 80, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service Info" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Status" and press the controller.
7. Select "State inspection" and press the controller.



8. Select "Set service date" and press the controller. The month is highlighted.
9. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.

10. Press the controller to apply the setting. The year is highlighted.
11. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
12. Press the controller to apply the setting. The date entry is stored.

To exit from the menu:
Select ↩ and press the controller.

More information on the BMW Maintenance System can be found on page 226.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Clock

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 28.

Setting the time

CarManuals2.com

In the instrument cluster

To set the 12h/24h mode, refer to Setting the 12h/24h format below.

1. Push button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the time and the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.
3. Use button **1** to set the hours.
4. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
5. Use button **1** to set the minutes.
6. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
7. Press button **2**.
   The system accepts the new time.

Via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

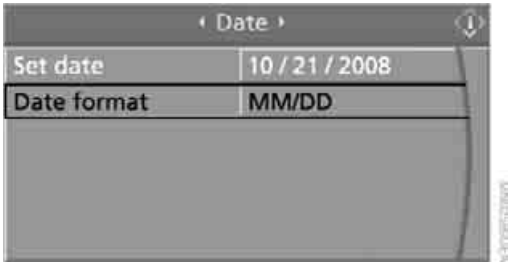
1. Press the **MENU** button once or twice until the start menu appears.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

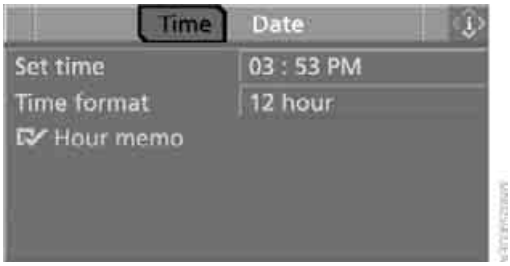
4. Turn the controller until "Time / Date" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. If necessary, move the controller forwards to move the highlight marker to the uppermost field.

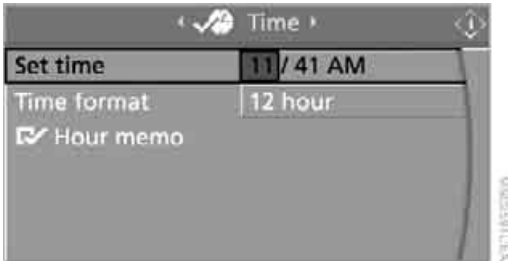


6. Turn the controller until "Time" is selected and press the controller.



7. Turn the controller until "Set time" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



Adjusting settings

8. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
9. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

The system accepts the new time.

Switching on the hour signal*

You will hear three tones just before each full hour.

Select "Hour memo" and press the controller.
The hour signal is activated.

Setting the 12h/24h format

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "Time / Date" is selected and press the controller.
5. Select "Time format" and press the controller.
6. Select the desired format and press the controller.

Date

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 28.

Setting the date

In the instrument cluster

To set the dd/mm or mm/dd date format, refer to Setting the date format below.

1. Push button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the date and the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.
3. Use button **1** to set the day of the month.
4. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
5. Set the month and the year in the same way.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

6. Press button **2**.
   The system stores the new date.

Via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Date" and press the controller.

5. Select "Set date" and press the controller.
   The first date display setting is selected.
6. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
7. Press the controller to apply the setting.
   The next setting is highlighted.
8. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the date is stored.

Setting the date format

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "Time / Date" is selected and press the controller.
5. Select "Date format" and press the controller.
6. Select the desired format and press the controller.

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any malfunctions in the systems monitored. Such a Check Control message includes indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster and, in some circumstances, an acoustic signal as well as text messages at the bottom of the Control Display.

Indicator and warning lamps

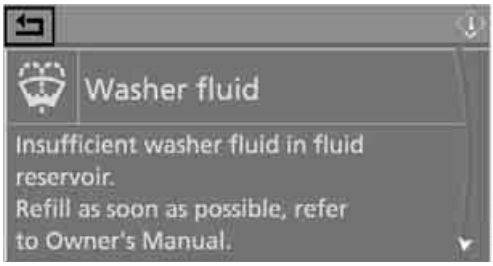
Indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

⚠ indicates that Check Control messages have been stored. You can view the Check Control messages whenever it is convenient for you.

CarManuals2.com

Explanatory text messages

Text messages at the lower edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

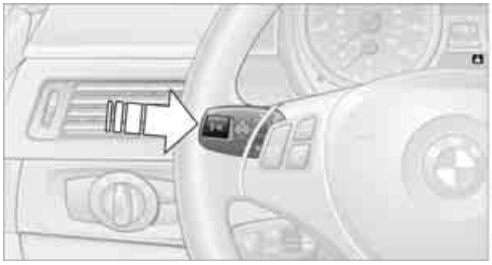


For most Check Control messages, you can view more information later, e.g. regarding the cause of a malfunction and how to respond, refer to page 82.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

To exit the displayed information:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button in the turn indicator lever.

Some Check Control messages are displayed until the malfunctions have been rectified. They cannot be hidden. If several malfunctions occur at the same time, they are displayed in succession.

They are marked with the symbol shown here.

Other messages are automatically hidden after approx. 20 seconds, but are kept in memory.

CarManuals2.com

They are marked with the symbol shown here.

Viewing stored Check Control messages

1. Push button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the words "CHECK CONTROL".
2. Press button **2**.
   "CHECK OK" appears if there are no Check Control messages.
   If a Check Control message has been stored, the corresponding lamp comes on. It is accompanied by a text message on the Control Display.
3. Push button **1** to check for other messages.
4. Press button **2**.
   The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

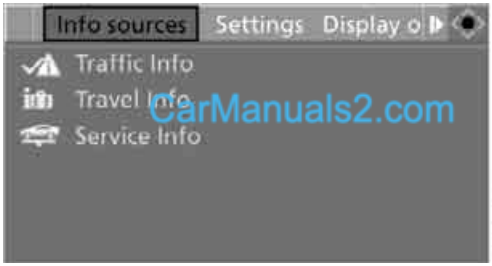
Viewing more information later

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

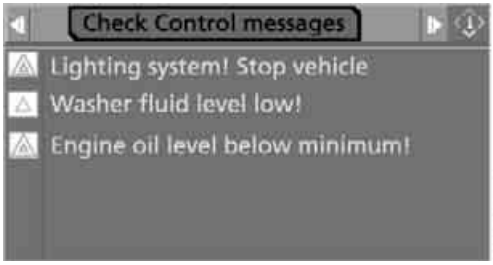
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.

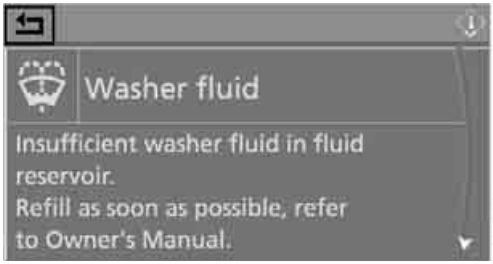


CarManuals2.com

4. Select "Service Info" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Check Control messages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select a text message and press the controller.



To exit the display:
Select ⮌ and press the controller.

Speed limit

You can enter a speed, and a Check Control message will indicate when you reach this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph or 5 km/h.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Call up "Navigation".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Limit" and press the controller.

Setting or changing the limit

1. Select speed value and press the controller.
2. Turn the controller to set the limit.
3. Press the controller to apply the setting.

Applying your current speed as limit

Select "Select current speed" and press the controller. The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating the limit

Select "On" and press the controller.
☑ Limit is activated.

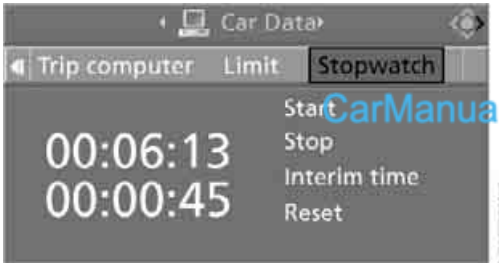
Stopwatch

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Call up "Navigation".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Select "Stopwatch" and press the controller.



Starting, stopping or resetting

▷ Select "Start" and press the controller. The stopwatch starts at the displayed time.

▷ Select "Reset" and press the controller. The stopwatch is reset and restarts if it was running beforehand.

▷ Select "Stop" and press the controller. This stops the timer.

Taking an interim time reading

Select "Interim time" and press the controller. The interim time appears below the ongoing primary stopwatch count.

▷ All of the remaining functions remain available at all times while the stopwatch is running. The stopwatch continues operation in the background.◀

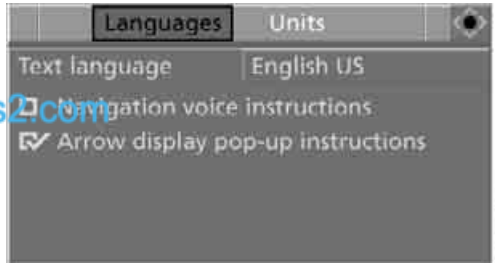
Altering settings

Language on the Control Display

The language of the Control Display can be set. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Language" is selected and press the controller.



5. Select "Text language" and press the controller. You can switch to another language for the display texts and navigation messages.
6. Select and activate the desired language by pressing the controller.

Brightness of the Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. Note, however, that you can change the basic setting while the low beams are switched on. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Brightness" is selected and press the controller.

5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

PDC Park Distance Control*

The concept

The PDC assists you with maneuvering in tight parking spaces. Acoustic signals and a visual indicator warn you of the presence of an object behind your vehicle. To measure the distance, there are four ultrasonic sensors in either bumper.

These sensors have a range of approx. 6.5 ft/ 2 m. However, an acoustic warning does not sound until an object is approx. 24 in/60 cm from the corner sensors, or approx. 5 ft/1.50 m from the center sensors.

PDC is a parking aid that can indicate objects when they are approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed, otherwise physical circumstances may lead to the system warning being issued too late.◀

Switching on automatically

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the system is activated after approx. 1 second when you engage reverse gear or move the automatic transmission selector lever to position R. Wait this short period before driving.

Switching off automatically

After approx. 165 ft/50 m of driving or above approx. 20 mph/approx. 30 km/h, the system switches off and the LED goes out.

Signal tones

When nearing an object, its position is indicated correspondingly by an interval tone. As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An interval tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds

- ▷ if you remain in front of an object that has been detected by only one of the corner sensors
- ▷ if you are driving parallel to a wall.

Malfunction

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on. PDC is malfunctioning. A message appears on the Control Display. Have the system checked.

To avoid this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. When using a high-pressure cleaner, do not spray the sensors for extended periods of time and only from a distance of at least 4 in/10 cm.

PDC with visual warning

You can also have the system show distances to objects on the Control Display. The contours of distant objects are shown on the Control Display even before the acoustic signal sounds. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Carmanuals2.com

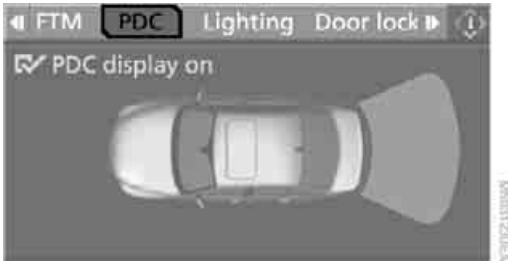
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

until "PDC" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "PDC display on" and press the controller.
   The PDC screen is activated.

The display is shown on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

System limitations

Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstructions always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are provided, there is a blind spot in which objects can no longer be detected. The system is also subject to the physical limits that apply to all forms of ultrasonic measurement, such as those encountered with trailer towbars and hitches, thin or wedge-shaped objects, etc. Low objects that have already been displayed, e.g. curbs, can disappear again from the detection area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g. ledges, cannot be detected. Therefore, always drive cautiously, otherwise there is a risk of personal injury or property damage.
Loud sound sources outside or inside the car can drown out the PDC signal.◀

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW has a number of systems that help to maintain the vehicle's stability even in adverse driving conditions.

CarManuals2.com

ABS Antilock Brake System

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

The ABS is operational every time you start the engine. Braking safely, refer to page 122.

Electronic brake-force distribution

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

DBC Dynamic Brake Control

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake for the duration of the full braking application.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

DSC prevents the driving wheels from losing traction when you pull away from rest or accelerate. The system also recognizes unstable driving conditions, for example if the rear of the car is about to swerve or if momentum is acting at an angle past the front wheels. In these cases, DSC helps the vehicle maintain a safe course within physical limits by reducing engine output and through braking actions at the individual wheels.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the driver. Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin again by taking risks, as this could result in an accident.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Deactivating DSC

Press the button for at least 3 seconds; the indicator lamps for DSC in the instrument cluster light up. Dynamic Traction Control DTC and DSC have been simultaneously deactivated. Stabilizing and drive-output promoting actions are no longer executed.

328i, 335i: in the same way as with a differential interlock, even if DSC is deactivated, brake actions are still performed on the rear axle to enhance drive output if the drive wheels experience a significant loss of traction.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC

Press the button again; the indicator lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

For better control

If the indicator lamp flashes:
DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

If the indicator lamps are on:
DSC is deactivated.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

DTC is a version of DSC in which the drive output is optimized for particular road conditions, e.g. unplowed snow-covered roads. The system assures the maximal drive output, but with reduced driving stability. It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- When driving uphill on snow-covered roads, in slush or on unplowed, snow-covered roads
- When rocking a stuck vehicle free or starting off in deep snow or on loose ground
- When driving with snow chains

Activating DTC

Press the button; the indicator lamps for DTC in the instrument cluster come on.

For better control

If the indicator lamp flashes:
DTC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

If the indicator lamps are on:
DTC has been activated.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again; the DTC indicator lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

xDrive*

xDrive is your BMW's four-wheel-drive system. The combined efforts of xDrive and DSC help to further optimize traction and driving dynamics. The xDrive four-wheel-drive system distributes driving power variably to the front and rear axles depending on the driving situation and road conditions.

HDC Hill Descent Control*

CarManuals2.com

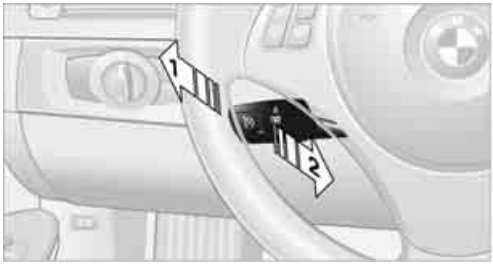
HDC is a downhill driving assistant that controls your speed on steep downhill gradients and makes it even easier to control your BMW's handling under these conditions. The vehicle

then moves slightly faster than double walking speed without the driver needing to intervene.

HDC can be activated as long as you are driving under approx. 20 mph or 35 km/h. When driving downhill at a speed of under approx. 20 mph or 35 km/h, the vehicle's speed is automatically reduced to slightly more than double walking speed and maintained.

Increasing or decreasing speed

By accelerating or braking you can change this speed within a range from approx. 3 to 15 mph, approx. 5 to 25 km/h.
You can specify a target speed within the same range using the cruise control* lever on the steering column.



1 To increase speed

2 To decrease speed

Activating HDC

Press the button; the LED lights up.
When the vehicle is being braked automatically, the LED flashes.

Deactivating HDC

Press the button again; the LED goes out.

HDC is automatically deactivated in the following situations:

- At speeds above approx. 40 mph or 60 km/h
- After switching off the ignition.

Using HDC

In cars with manual transmission:
Use HDC in lower gears and in reverse gear.

With automatic transmission:
You can use HDC in any drive position.

Displays in the instrument cluster*

1 Display for target speed

2 HDC display

CarManuals2.com

Malfunction

The HDC display disappears during HDC operation, or does not appear:
HDC is temporarily unavailable due to excessive brake temperature, or DSC has failed.

Drive-off assistant

The drive-off assistant enables you to drive off smoothly on uphill gradients. It is not necessary to use the parking brake for this.

1. Hold the car in place by depressing the brake.
2. Release the brake and drive off without delay.

The drive-off assistant holds the car in place for approx. 2 seconds after the brake is released. Drive off without delay after releasing the brake. Otherwise, the drive-off assistant will no longer hold the car in place

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

after approx. 2 seconds and the car will start to roll backwards.◀

Flat Tire Monitor FTM*

The concept

The Flat Tire Monitor detects pressure loss in a tire by comparing the rotating speeds of the individual tires while moving.

In the event of pressure loss, the rolling circumference changes and, thus, the rotating speed of the affected wheel. This change is detected and is reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be initialized for the correct tire inflation pressure.

▷ The system must be reinitialized each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed.◀

System limitations

⚠ The Flat Tire Monitor is unable to warn the driver of sudden, severe tire damage caused by external factors, nor can it identify the gradual loss of pressure that will inevitably occur in all four tires over a lengthy period of time.◀

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- ▷ System has not been initialized
- ▷ Driving on snowy or slippery road surface
- ▷ Performance-oriented style of driving: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- ▷ Snow chains are attached

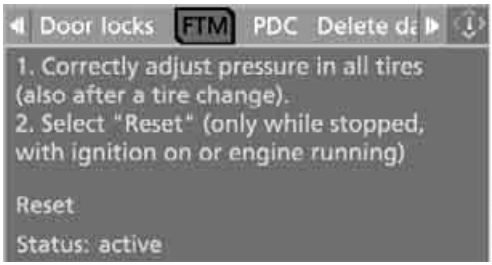
Initializing the system

▷ The initialization is completed during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically.
Do not initialize the system while snow chains are attached.◀

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "FTM" is selected and press the controller.



6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.
8. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

9. Start to drive.
   Initialization is completed while the car is on the move, without any feedback.

CarManuals2.com

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamps come on in yellow and red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure.

CarManuals2.com

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph or 80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph or 80 km/h.

   If the car is not equipped with Run-Flat Tires, refer to page 219, the standard equipment by design, do not continue driving. Otherwise a severe accident could result if you continue driving.◀

2. At the next opportunity, check the air pressure in all four tires.

   If all four tires are inflated to the correct pressures, the Flat Tire Monitor might not have been initialized. The system must then be initialized.◀

3. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guidelines:

   - With a light load:
     1 to 2 persons without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - With a medium load:
     2 persons, cargo bay full, or 4 persons without luggage:
     approx. 90 miles/150 km
   - With a full load or when towing a trailer:
     4 or more persons, cargo bay full:
     approx. 30 miles/50 km

Drive cautiously and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph or 80 km/h, otherwise there is a risk of an accident. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
If unusual vibration or loud noises occur during the journey, this may be an indication that the damaged tire has finally failed. Reduce your speed and pull over as soon as possible at a suitable location. Otherwise parts of the tire could come loose, resulting in an accident. Do not continue driving. Instead, contact your BMW center.◀

Malfunction

The warning lamps come on in yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. The Flat Tire Monitor has a malfunction or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM*

The concept

TPM checks the inflation pressures of the four mounted tires. The system notifies you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be reset while all tire inflation pressures are correct.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics. Otherwise, the system may malfunction.

Each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed, reset the system.◀

System limitations

TPM cannot warn you in advance of sudden severe tire damage caused by outside influences.◀

The system does not work correctly if it has not been reset; for example, a flat tire may be indicated even though the tire inflation pressures are correct.

The system is inactive and cannot indicate a flat tire if a wheel without TPM electronics, such as a compact spare wheel, has been mounted, or if TPM is temporarily malfunctioning due to other systems or devices using the same radio frequency.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Status indicator on the Control Display

The color of the tires represents the status of the tires and the system.

TPM takes into account that tire pressures change while the vehicle is being driven. The tire pressures do not need to be corrected unless the TPM instructs you to do so by means of color indicators.

CarManuals2.com

Green

The tire inflation pressure corresponds to the established target value.

"TPM active" appears on the Control Display.

One wheel yellow

There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels yellow

There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray

The system cannot detect a puncture.

Possible reasons for this:

- ▷ TPM is being reset
- ▷ Temporary malfunction caused by systems or devices using the same radio frequency
- ▷ Malfunction

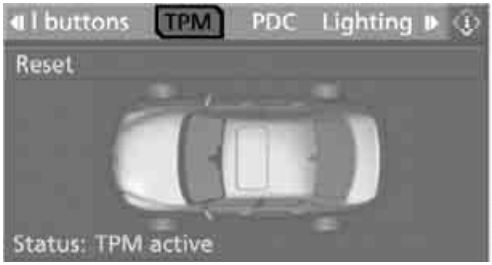
Resetting the system

▷ Each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed, reset the system.◀

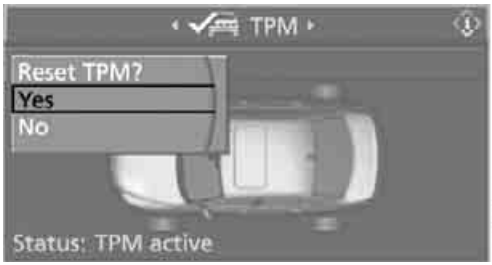
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button
   The start menu is called up.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "TPM" is selected and press the controller.



6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.
8. Select "Yes" and press the controller.



9. Start to drive.
   The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After driving a few minutes, the set inflation pressures in the tires are accepted as the target values to be monitored. The system reset is completed during your drive, and can be inter-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

rupted at any time. When driving resumes, the reset is continued automatically. On the Control Display, the tires are shown in green and "Status: TPM active" is displayed again.

▷ If a flat tire is detected while the system is resetting and determining the inflation pressures, all tires on the Control Display are displayed in yellow. The message "Tire low!" is shown.◀

CarManuals2.com

Message for low tire inflation pressure

The warning lamps come on in yellow and red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, a signal sounds. There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure.

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   ⚠ If the car is not equipped with Run-Flat Tires, refer to page 219, the standard equipment by design, do not continue driving. Otherwise a severe accident could result after a tire puncture if you continue driving.◀

2. In the event of complete pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guidelines:
   - ▷ With a light load:
     1 to 2 persons without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - ▷ With a medium load:
     2 persons, cargo bay full, or 4 persons without luggage:
     approx. 95 miles/150 km
   - ▷ With a full load:
     4 or more persons, cargo bay full:
     approx. 30 miles/50 km

⚠ Drive cautiously and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.

If unusual vibration or loud noises occur during the journey, this may be an indication that the damaged tire has finally failed. Reduce your speed and pull over as soon as possible at a suitable location. Otherwise parts of the tire could come loose, resulting in an accident. Do not continue driving. Instead, contact your BMW center.◀

Malfunction

The small warning lamp flashes in yellow and then lights up continuously; the larger warning lamp comes on in yellow. On the Control Display, the tires are shown in gray and a message appears. No punctures can be detected.

his type of message is shown in the following situations:

- ▷ If there is a malfunction
  Have the system checked.
- ▷ If a wheel without TPM electronics has been mounted
- ▷ If TPM is temporarily malfunctioning due to other systems or devices using the same radio frequency.

Message for unsuccessful system reset

The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message will appear on the Control Display. The system is not reset after a tire has been changed, for example.

Check the tire inflation pressure and reset the system, refer to page 91.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level at which the TPMS low tire pressure telltale illuminates.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously lit. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

carmanuals2.com

Active steering*

The concept

Active steering varies the turning angle of the front wheels in relation to steering wheel movements. It also varies the steering force required to turn the wheels depending on the speed at which you are driving.

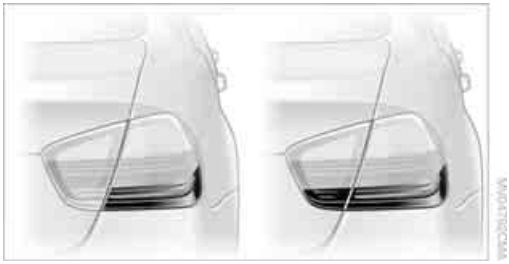
When you are driving in the low road-speed range, e.g. in a town or when parking, the steering angle increases, i.e. the steering becomes very direct, and less effort is required to turn the wheels. In the higher speed range, on the other hand, the steering angle is reduced more and more. This improves the handling capability of your BMW over the entire speed range.

In critical situations, the system can make targeted corrections to the steering angle provided by the driver and thus stabilize the vehicle before the driver intervenes. This stabilizing intervention is simultaneously deactivated when DSC is switched off, refer to page 87.

Malfunction

The warning lamps come on. Active steering is no longer operational. At low speeds, greater steering wheel movements are required, whereas at higher speeds the vehicle reacts more sensitively to steering wheel movements. The stability-enhancing feature may also be deactivated. Drive cautiously and think well ahead. Have the system checked.

Brake Force Display

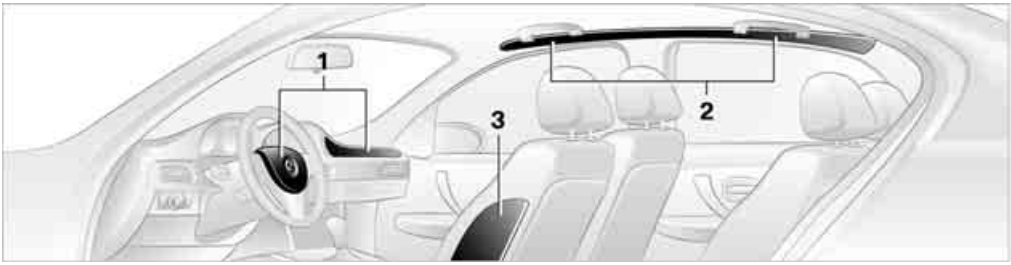


On the left: normal braking

On the right: sharp braking

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Airbags



The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Head airbags, front and rear

3 Side airbags in the seat backrests

Protective action

Observe the adjustment instructions on page 43 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area. The head air bag supports the head.

The airbags have been designed to not be triggered in every collision situation, e.g. not in minor accidents or rear-end collisions.

Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way. Do not attach seat covers, cushions or other objects not specifically approved for seats with integral side airbags to the front seats. Do not hang items of clothing such as coats or jackets over the backrests. Do not attempt to remove the airbag retention system from the vehicle. Do not modify the individual components of the system or its wiring in any way. This includes the upholstered covers on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seats and roof posts, as well as the sides of the roof lining. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel.
Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.
In the event of malfunctions, deactivation or triggering of the airbag restraint system, have the testing, repair, removal and disposal of airbag generators executed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to repair procedures of BMW with correspondingly trained personnel and that has the required explosives licenses. Unprofessional attempts to work on the system could lead to failure in an emergency or to undesired airbag activation, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

Warning notices and information about the airbags can also be found on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

An analysis of the impression in the front passenger seat cushion determines whether and how the seat is occupied. The front and side airbags for the front passenger are activated or deactivated by the system accordingly.

The indicator lamp above the interior rearview mirror shows the current status of the front passenger airbags, deactivated or activated, refer to Status of front passenger airbags below.

CarManuals2.com

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, read the safety precautions and handling instructions under Transporting children safely, refer to page 52.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The front and side airbags can also be deactivated by adolescents and adults sitting in certain positions; the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags comes on. In such cases, the passenger should change his or her sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired airbag status cannot be achieved by changing the sitting position, transport the relevant passenger on a rear seat. Do not attach seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW. Do not place any items under the seat which could press against the seat from below. Otherwise a correct analysis of the seat cushion is not ensured.◀

Status of front passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags shows the functional status of the front passenger's front and side airbags in accordance with whether and how the front passenger seat is occupied. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a specially designated child-restraint system is detected, as intended, on the seat. The front and side airbags for the front passenger are not activated.

▷ Most child seats are detected by the system, especially child seats required by the NHTSA at the time of vehicle production. After mounting a child seat, ensure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbag is lit. It indicates that the child seat has been detected and that the front passenger airbags are deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp does not come on as long as a person of sufficient size and in a correct sitting position is detected on the seat.
The front and side airbags for the front passenger are activated.

▷ The indicator lamp does not come on if the seat is empty.
The front and side airbags for the front passenger are not activated.

Operational readiness of airbag system

As of radio readiness, refer to page 56, the warning lamp comes on briefly to indicate that the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners are operational.

CarManuals2.com

Airbag system malfunction

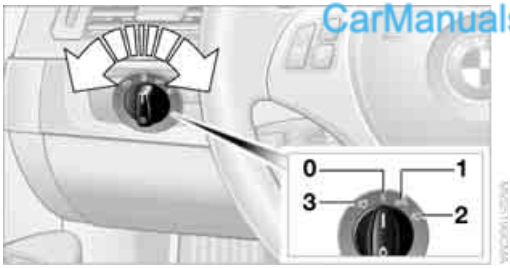
▷ Warning lamp does not light up at radio readiness or beyond.

▷ Warning lamp remains permanently on.

In the event of a fault in the airbag system, have it checked without delay, otherwise there is the risk that the system will not function as intended even if a sufficiently severe accident occurs.◀

Lamps

Parking lamps/low beams



0 Lamps off,
daytime running lamps

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lamps

2 Low-beam headlamps and welcome lamps

3 Automatic headlamp control*, daytime running lamps, welcome lamps and Adaptive Head Light*

When you open the driver's door with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off if the light switch is in position **0**, **2** or **3**.

Switch on the parking lamps if necessary, switch position **1**.

Parking lamps

In switch position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking.

When the ignition is switched off and the switch is in position **1**, only the outside sections of the rear lamps are illuminated, refer to page 231.

▷ The parking lamps will discharge the battery. Therefore, do not leave them on for unduly long periods of time, otherwise the battery might not have enough power to start the engine. It is preferable to switch on the left-hand or right-hand roadside parking lamps, refer to page 98.◀

Low beams

The low beams light up when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is on.

Automatic headlamp control*

When the switch is in position **3**, the low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on ambient light conditions, e.g. in a tunnel, in twilight, or if there is precipitation. The Adaptive Head Light* is active. The LED next to the symbol is illuminated when the low beams are on. You can also activate the daytime running lamps, refer to page 97. In the situations described above, the lamps then automatically switch from daytime running lamps to low beams.

The headlamps may also come on when the sun is sitting low on a blue sky.

▷ The low beams remain switched on independent of the ambient lighting conditions when you switch on the fog lamps*.◀

⚠ The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the system cannot detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the low-beam headlamps manually under these conditions.◀

Welcome lamps

If you leave the light switch in position **2** or **3** when you park the car, the parking lamps and the interior lamps light up briefly when you unlock the vehicle.

Activating/deactivating welcome lamps

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Welcome light" and press the controller.

   The welcome lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Pathway lighting

If you activate the headlamp flasher after parking the car, with the lights switched off, the low beams come on and remain on for a certain time.

You can adjust the operating period or deactivate the function.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Select "Lighting" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

6. Select "Pathway lighting" and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to select the corresponding duration.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lamps

The daytime running lamps light up in switch positions **0**, **1** and **3**.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lamps

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Select "Lighting" and press the controller.

6. Select "Daytime running lamps" and press the controller.

   The daytime running lamps are switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adaptive Head Light*

The concept

Adaptive Head Light is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

Activating Adaptive Head Light

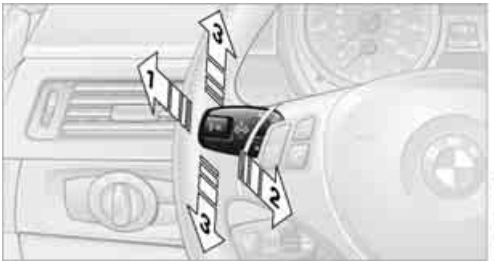
With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 96.

To avoid dazzling the drivers of oncoming vehicles, Adaptive Head Light is not active when the car is driven in reverse, and directs the light to the front passenger's side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Malfunction

The LED next to the symbol for automatic headlamp control flashes. Adaptive Head Light is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High beams/roadside parking lamps



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Roadside parking lamps*

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

There is an additional option of switching on the lamps on the side of the car facing the road when parked.

Switching on

CarManuals2.com

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the pressure point for a longer period, arrow **3**.

▷ The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Therefore, do not leave them on for unduly long periods of time, otherwise the battery might not have enough power to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Press the lever in the opposite direction to the pressure point, arrow **3**.

Fog lamps*

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on for the fog lamps to operate. The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up whenever the fog lamps are on.

The fog lamps are switched off while you activate the headlamp flasher or switch on the high beams.

▷ If the automatic headlamp control is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the fog lamps.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Instrument lighting

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument lighting only when the parking lamps or the low beams are switched on.

1. Push button **1** up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the brightness setting and scale the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.

3. Push button **1** up or down to select the desired brightness level.
4. Press button **2** in the turn indicator lever. The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

Interior lamps

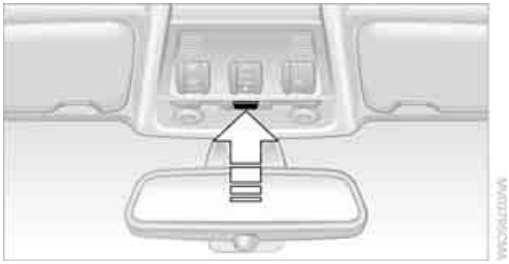
The interior lamps, footwell lamps*, entry lamps*, cargo bay lamp and courtesy lamps* are controlled automatically.

The LEDs for the courtesy lamps are set in the door handles and illuminate the ground in front of the doors.

CarManuals2.com

▷ To avoid draining the battery, all lamps inside the car are switched off about 8 minutes after the ignition is switched off, refer to Start/stop button on page 56.◀

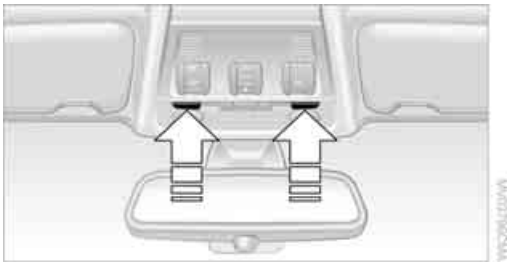
Switching interior lamps on/off manually



Interior lamps, front and rear*:
To switch on and off, press the button.

To switch off the interior lamps, footwell lamps*, entry lamps* and courtesy lamps* permanently, press the button for the front interior lamps for about 3 seconds.

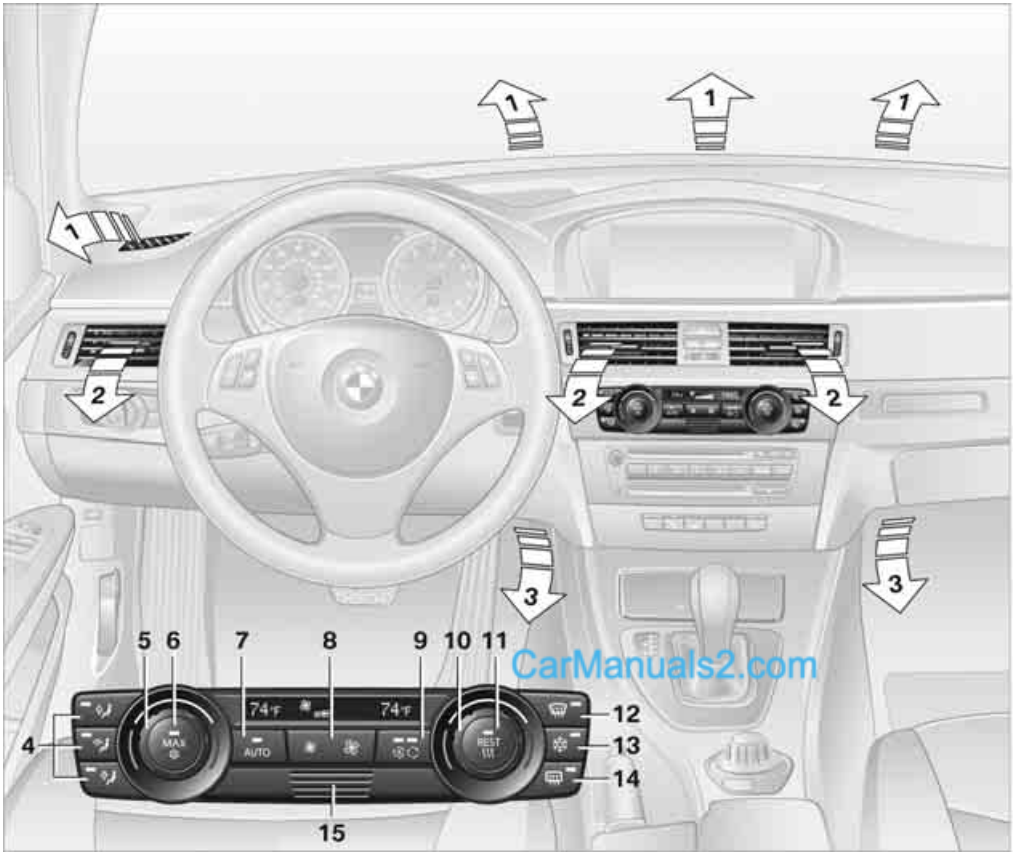
Reading lamps



There are reading lamps at the front and rear*, next to the interior lamps. To switch on and off, press the button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Climate



1 Airflow directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air to the upper body area
Draft-free ventilation 103

3 Air to the footwell

4 Air distribution, manual

5 Temperature adjustment, left-hand side of passenger compartment

6 Maximum cooling

7 AUTO program

8 Air flow rate, manual

9 AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/ Recirculated-air mode

10 Temperature adjustment, right-hand side of passenger compartment

11 Residual heat

12 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

13 Switching cooling function on/off manually

14 Rear window defroster

15 Air grill for interior temperature sensor – please keep clear and unobstructed

The current setting for the air distribution is displayed on the Control Display, refer to page 101.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Automatic climate control

Comfortable interior climate

AUTO program **7** offers the ideal air distribution and air flow rate for almost all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. All you need to do is select an interior temperature which is comfortable for you.

The following sections inform you in detail about how to adjust the settings.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile settings on page 28.

CarManuals2.com

Adjusting air distribution manually

The air distribution can be switched on and off manually. The air is directed to the windshield, to the upper body area and to the footwell. Automatic air distribution adjustment is deactivated.

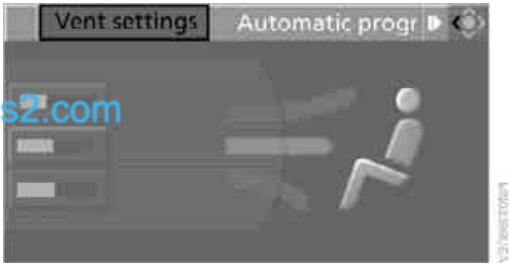
You can switch the automatic air distribution back on by pressing the AUTO button. This automatically switches on the cooling function as well.

Fine adjustments to manual air distribution

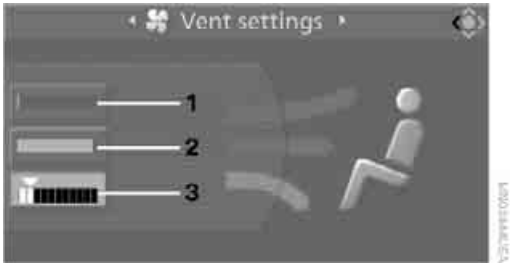
You can set the rate of incoming airflow for manual air distribution.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.



4. Select the desired field.
5. Turn the controller to set the air distribution.



1 Airflow directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air to the upper body area

3 Air to the footwell

Temperature

Set the desired temperatures individually for the driver's and front passenger's sides.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible regardless of the season, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary, and then maintains it.

▷ When you switch between different temperature settings in quick succession, the automatic climate control does not have enough time to achieve the set temperature.◀

You can achieve maximum heating power with the highest setting, regardless of the outside temperature.

The lowest setting effects continuous cooling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Maximum cooling

At outside temperatures above 32 °F /0 °C and when the engine is running, you obtain a maximum cooling effect as soon as possible.

The automatic climate control goes into recirculated-air mode at the lowest temperature. Air flows at maximum rate from the vents for the upper body area. You should therefore open them for maximum cooling.

CarManuals2.com

AUTO program

The AUTO program adjusts the air distribution to the windshield and side windows, towards the upper body area and into the footwell for you. The air flow rate and your temperature specifications will be adapted to outside influences as a result of seasonal changes, e.g. sunlight or window condensation.

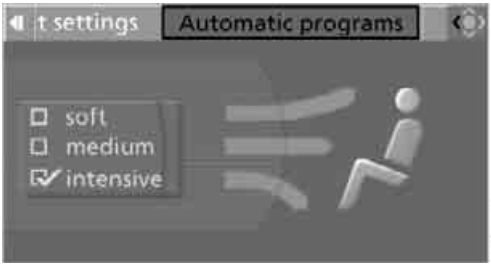
The cooling is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Intensity of the AUTO program

Press the AUTO button repeatedly to set the intensity of the AUTO program. The current setting is briefly displayed on the Control Display every time the button is pressed.

You can also set the intensity of the AUTO program via iDrive.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to call up "Climate".
3. Select "Automatic programs" and press the controller.



4. Select the desired intensity and press the controller.

The selected intensity level of the automatic program is switched on.

Adjusting air flow rate manually

Press the left side of the button to reduce airflow. Press the right side of the button to increase it.

You can reactivate the automatic mode for the air flow rate with the AUTO button.

The air flow rate may be reduced or the blower may be switched off entirely to save on battery power. The display remains the same.

Switching the system on/off

With the blower at its lowest setting, press the left side of the button to switch off the automatic climate control. All displays are cleared except for the rear window defroster if it is switched on.

Press any button except REST or rear window defroster to reactivate the automatic climate control.

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/Recirculated-air mode

Switch on the desired operating mode by pressing this button repeatedly:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left-hand LED on, AUC mode: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air. If necessary, the system blocks the supply of outside air and recirculates the inside air. As soon as the concentration of pollutants in the outside air has decreased sufficiently, the system automatically switches back to outside air supply.
- ▷ Right-hand LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

If condensation starts to form on the inside window surfaces during operation in the recirculated-air mode, you should switch

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

it off while also increasing the air flow rate as required.
The recirculated-air mode should not be used over an extended period of time, otherwise the air quality inside the car will deteriorate continuously.◀

Via the button* on the steering wheel

You can switch quickly between the recirculated-air mode and the previous mode using an individually programmable button on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the passenger compartment, e.g. while stopped at a school to pick up a child.

The function can be switched on when the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Up to 15 minutes after the engine has been switched off
- ▷ While the engine is at operating temperature
- ▷ As long as battery voltage is sufficient
- ▷ At an outside temperature below 77 °F / 25 °C

The LED is lit when the function is on.

As of radio readiness, you can set the interior temperature, the air flow rate and the air distribution.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Quickly removes ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.
Switch on the cooling function as well.

Switching cooling function on/off

The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before reheating it as required, according to the temperature setting. This function is only available while the engine is running.

The cooling function helps prevent condensation on the windows or removes it quickly.

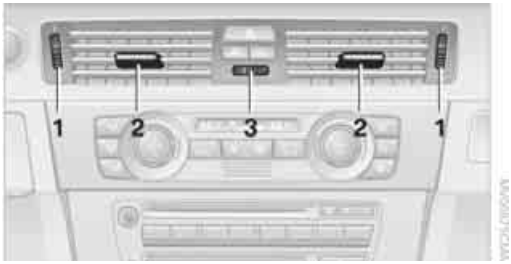
Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is automatically switched on along with the AUTO program.

Rear window defroster

The defroster is switched off automatically after a certain time.
Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the upper wires serve as an antenna and are not part of the rear window defroster.

Ventilation



1 Use the knurled wheels to smoothly open and close the air vents

2 Use the lever to change the direction of the airflow

3 Knurled wheel for more or less cool air from the vents for the upper body area

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance if it has become too hot in the car.

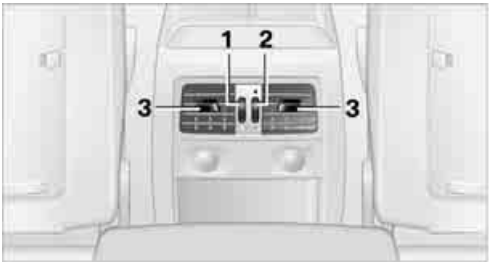
Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and not straight at you.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Ventilation in the rear



1 Use the knurled wheel to smoothly open and close the air vents

2 Use the knurled wheel to adjust the temperature:

- ▷ Turn toward blue: colder
- ▷ Turn toward red: warmer

3 Use the lever to change the direction of the airflow

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your BMW center replaces this combined filter during routine maintenance.

Parked car ventilation

The concept

The parked car ventilation provides ventilation to the passenger compartment and lowers its temperature, if necessary. It is ready for use at any outside temperature, as of radio readiness.

The parked car ventilation remains switched on for 30 minutes. Two different switch-on times can be preselected. The system can also be switched on and off directly.
Due to its high power consumption, it should not be switched on twice in a row without driving in between to allow the battery to recharge.

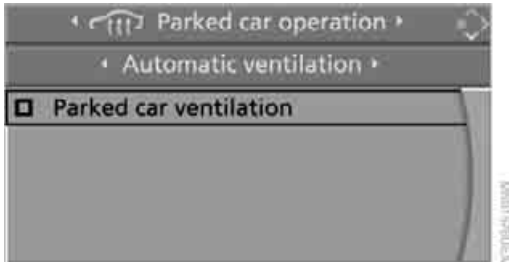
The air emerges from the air vents for the upper body area in the instrument panel. The air vents must therefore be open.

The parked car ventilation system is operated via iDrive.

Switching on/off directly

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Automatic ventilation" and press the controller.
5. Select "Parked car ventilation" and press the controller.



✔ The parked car ventilation is switched on.
The symbol on the automatic climate control display flashes.

Preselecting switch-on times

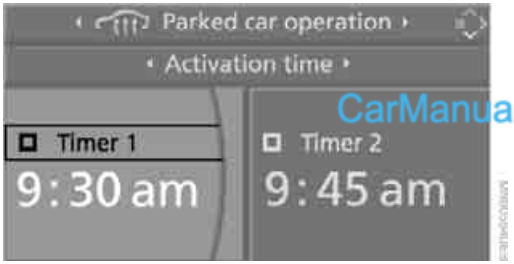
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Activation time" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2".

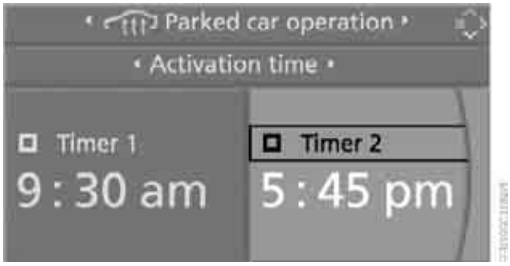


6. Select the time and press the controller. The first time setting is selected.

7. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next setting is highlighted.
9. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the time is stored.

Activating switch-on times

Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2" and then press the controller.



The switch-on time is activated.
The symbol on the automatic climate control display lights up.

The symbol on the automatic climate control display flashes when the system has switched on.

The respective system is switched on within the next 24 hours only. After these have elapsed, it must be reactivated.

CarManuals2.com

Practical interior accessories

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled devices, such as garage doors and gates or lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. After this, the programmed memory button **1** will operate the system in question. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

Should you sell your vehicle one day, be sure to delete the stored programs beforehand for your safety, refer to page 107.

To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the pivoting or travel range of the device being operated. Comply also with the safety instructions supplied with the original hand-held transmitter.◀

Checking compatibility

If this symbol appears on the package or in the instructions supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, you can assume that the radio remote control device will be compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

For additional information, please contact your BMW center or call: 1-800-355-3515.
You can also obtain information on the Internet at:
www.bmwusa.com or
www.homelink.com.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.◀

Programming

1 Memory buttons

2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 56.
2. When starting operation for the first time: Press the left and right memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes rapidly. The three memory buttons are cleared.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 4 to 12 in/10 to 30 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the system of the respective original hand-held transmitter used.◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit key on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat this step.
5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

You can operate the device while the ignition is switched off.

If the device fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly and then remains lit for about two seconds, the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. If it uses an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described under Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the device to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization. When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in the section Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for step 5.
5. Press the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control three times.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

If you have any questions, please contact your BMW center.◀

Deleting all stored programs

Press the left and right memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes rapidly: all stored programs are deleted.

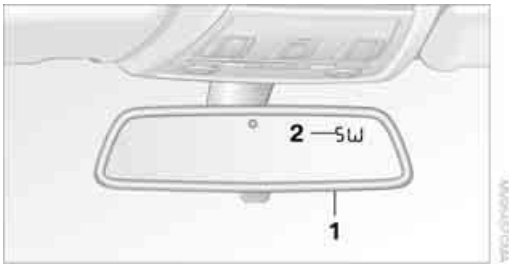
Reassigning individual programs

1. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 4 to 12 in/10 to 30 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the system of the respective original hand-held transmitter used.◀
2. Press the desired memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control.
3. If the LED **2** flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the transmit key of the original hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons as soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat this step.

CarManuals2.com

Digital compass*



1 Adjustment button

2 Display

The display shows you the main or secondary compass direction in which you are driving.

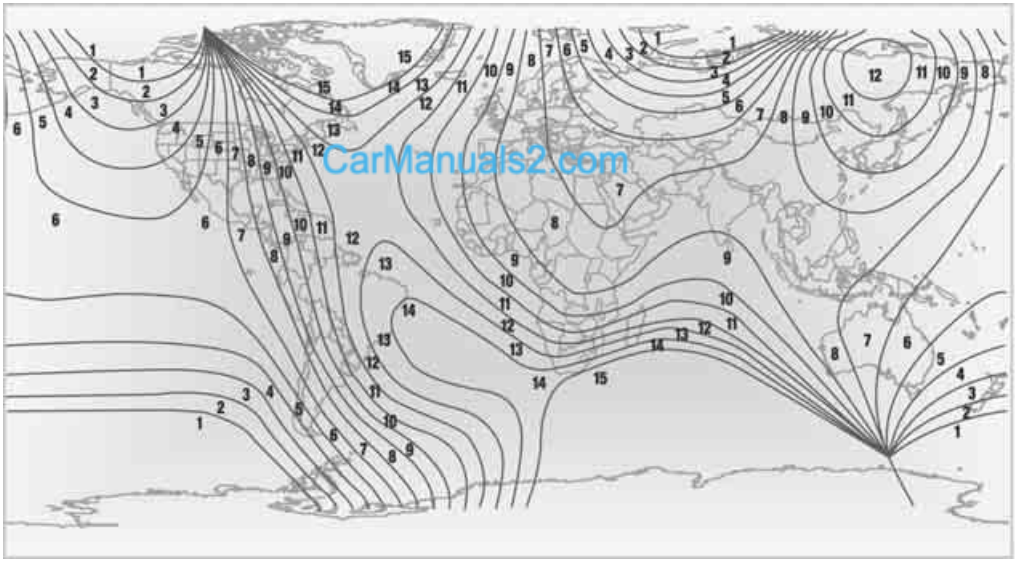
Operating principle

You can call up various functions by pressing the adjustment button with a pointed object such as a pen or similar item. The following adjustment options are displayed one after the other, depending on how long you keep the adjustment button pressed:

- ▷ Press briefly: switch display on/off
- ▷ 3 to 6 seconds: set the compass zone
- ▷ 6 to 9 seconds: calibrate the compass
- ▷ 9 to 12 seconds: set left-hand/right-hand steering
- ▷ 12 to 15 seconds: set the language

Setting compass zones

Set the compass zone corresponding to your vehicle's geographic location so that the compass can function correctly; refer to the world map with compass zones.



To set the compass zone, press the adjustment button for approx. 3-4 seconds. The number of the compass zone set is shown in the display.

To change the zone setting, briefly press the adjustment button repeatedly until the display shows the number of the compass zone corresponding to your current location.

The compass is operational again after approx. 10 seconds.

Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the following situations:

- ▷ An incorrect compass direction is shown.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

▷ The compass direction shown does not change although the direction of travel does.

▷ Not all compass directions are shown.

Procedure

1. Make sure that no large metal objects or overhead power lines are in the vicinity of your vehicle and that you have enough space to drive in a circle.
2. Set the currently valid compass zone.
3. Press the adjustment button for approx. 6-7 seconds to call up C. Then drive in at least one full circle at a speed of no more than 4 mph or 7 km/h.
   If calibration is successful, the display changes from C to a compass direction.

Setting right-hand/left-hand steering

Your digital compass is factory-set to right-hand or left-hand steering, in accordance with your vehicle.

Setting the language

You can set the language of the display:

Press the adjustment button for approx. 12-13 seconds. Briefly press the adjustment button again to switch between English, "E", and German, "O".

The setting is automatically saved after approx. 10 seconds.

Roller sun blinds*

Rear window blind

Tap the button in the center console to raise or lower the roller sun blind.

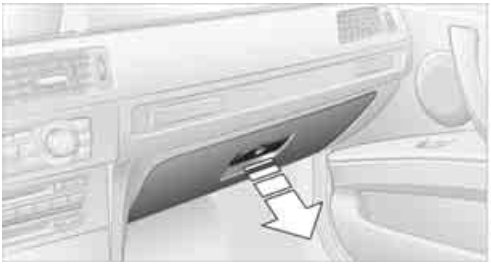
Roller sun blinds for rear side windows

Pull loop of roller sun blind and hook onto bracket.

⚠ Do not open the window when the roller sun blind has been pulled up, otherwise there is a risk of damage at high speeds that may result in personal injury.◀

Glove compartment

Opening



Pull the handle.
The light in the glove compartment comes on.

⚠ To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven, close the glove compartment immediately after use.◀

Closing

Fold cover up.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Locking

To lock the glove compartment, use the integrated key of the remote control, refer to page 28.

LED hand lamp

CarManuals2.com

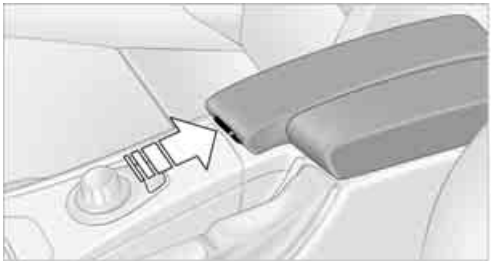
In a holder on the left side of the glove compartment.

▷ Insert the hand lamp into the holder with the lens pointing toward the passenger compartment to ensure that the lamp cannot be switched on accidentally.◀

Center armrest

Storage compartment

The center armrest between the front seats contains either a compartment or the cover for the snap-in adapter*, depending on the equipment version. For more information about this mobile phone base plate refer to the separate Owner's Manual.



Opening

Press the button, see arrow.

Ventilated storage compartment

The storage compartment in the center armrest can be ventilated: slide the switch backwards.

The temperature is controlled via the knurled wheel for adjusting the temperature of air ventilating the rear of the passenger compartment, refer to page 104.

Connection for external audio device

You can connect an external audio device such as a CD or MP3 player and play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system:

- ▷ AUX-In port, refer to page 175
- ▷ USB-audio interface*, refer to page 176

Storage compartments inside the vehicle

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you will find compartments beside the steering column*, in the front doors and in the center console*.
There are nets* on the front-seat backrests.

Clothes hooks

There are clothes hooks on the grab handles in the rear passenger compartment.

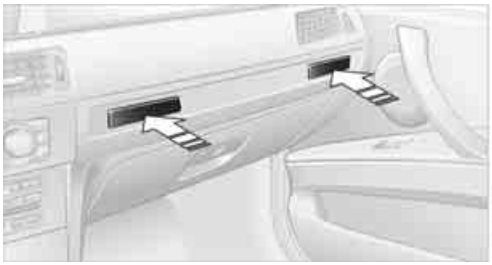
⚠ Items of clothing hung from the hooks must not obstruct the driver's view. Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks, otherwise they could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Cup holders

Use lightweight and shatterproof containers and do not transport hot beverages, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury in the event of the accident. Do not force containers that are too large into the cup holders, otherwise damage could result.◀

Front



Opening

Briefly press the center of the cover.

Closing

Briefly press the cover in the center and push in the cup holder.

CarManuals2.com

Ashtray, front

Opening

Push the ridge on the cover.

Emptying

Lift out the insert.

Lighter

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, press in the cigarette lighter.

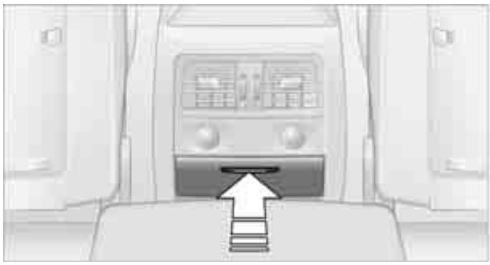
The lighter can be pulled out as soon as it pops back out.

Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.
When leaving the car, always remove the remote control so that children cannot operate the cigarette lighter and burn themselves.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Ashtray, rear

Opening



Push the ridge on the cover.

Emptying

Lift out the insert.

Connecting electrical appliances

In your BMW, when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on, you can use electrical devices such as a flashlight, car vacuum cleaner, etc., up to approx. 200 watts at 12 volts, as long as one of the following sockets is available. Avoid damaging the sockets by attempting to insert plugs of unsuitable shape or size.

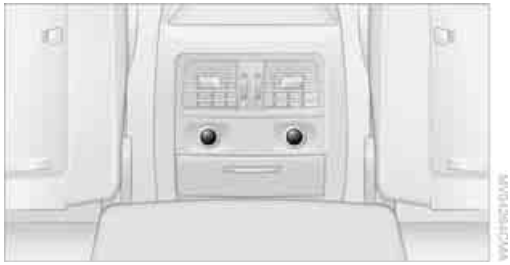
Cigarette lighter socket*

To access the socket: take the cigarette lighter out of the socket.

Socket in the center armrest

External audio device, refer to page 110.

Sockets in the rear center console*



Remove corresponding cover.

Socket in the cargo bay*

Sedan

Sports Wagon

Open the cap.

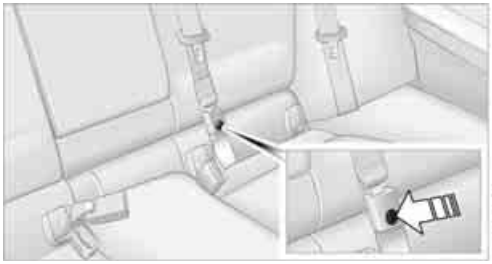
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

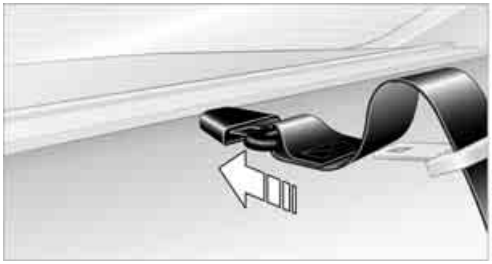
Sedan: Through-loading system*

Opening

1. Open the belt lock of the rear center safety belt. To do so, press the button, see arrow, and release the latch plate.



2. Insert the latch plate at the end of the belt into the specially designated fixture on the rear window shelf.



3. Push the corresponding head restraint down as far as it will go, refer to page 46.
4. To release the rear seat backrest, pull the corresponding lever in the cargo bay.

CarManuals2.com

5. The unlocked rear seat backrest moves forward slightly. Fold the backrest forward by the head restraint.

Closing

1. Return the rear seat backrest to its upright position and engage it.

   ⚠ When returning the backrest into its seating position, make sure that the seat's locking mechanism engages properly. Otherwise, cargo could be thrown around in the event of sharp braking or swerving and endanger the occupants.◀

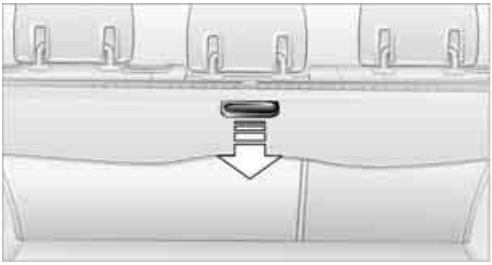
2. Release the latch plate from the fixture on the rear window shelf and insert it into the belt lock of the center safety belt. Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The lashing eyes in the cargo bay provide you with a way to attach cargo bay nets* or draw straps for securing suitcases and luggage, refer to page 124.

Sports Wagon: Cargo bay

Roll-up cover



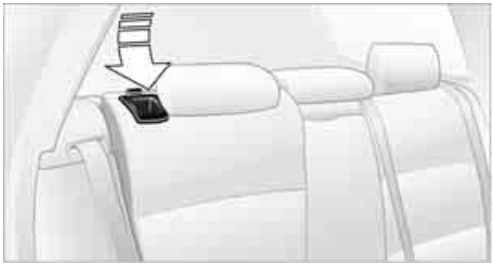
Pull out the cover and hook it into the retaining fixtures.

Do not place objects on the cover, otherwise they could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in the case of braking or sudden swerving.
Do not let the cover retract, otherwise it could be damaged.◀

The roll-up cover is raised when the rear window or tailgate is opened*. Before closing the rear window or tailgate, press the roll-up cover downward until it engages.◀

Expanding the cargo bay

The rear seat backrest is divided. You can fold down either division in order to expand the cargo bay.

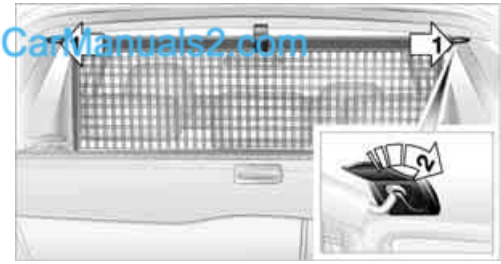


Reach into the recess and pull forwards.

When folding the backrest back up, make sure that the catch engages properly. If you cannot see a red warning area in the recess, the catch is properly engaged. Otherwise, cargo can be thrown around inside the passenger compartment and endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in the case of braking or sudden swerving.◀

Observe the instructions concerning the safety belt on page 43 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

Partition net



CarManuals2.com

Do not let the partition net retract, otherwise there is a risk of danger and the partition net could be damaged.◀

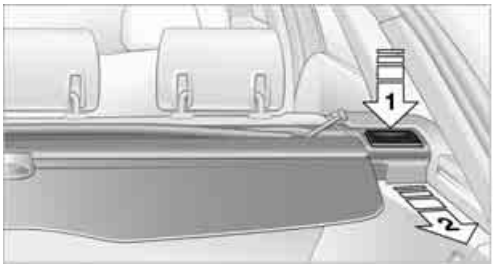
Use the loop strap to pull the partition net out of the casing. Grip the bar on both ends and insert it into the retaining fixtures, arrow **1**. This can best be done from the rear seat.

When you no longer require the partition net, grip both ends of the bar and take it out of the retaining fixtures, arrow **2**. Let the partition net slide into the casing slowly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

With cargo bay expanded

1. Fold down both rear seat backrests, refer to Expanding the cargo bay.
2. Use the buttons to unlatch the casing on both sides, arrow **1**.



3. Pull the casing out backwards, arrow **2**, without tilting it.

4. Slide the casing into the guides on the backs of the seat backrests.
5. Carefully pull out the partition net and insert it into the front retaining fixtures, refer to Partition net above. This can best be done from the front seat.

Follow the same steps in reverse order to return the partition net and seats to their original positions. Finally, slide the casing into both retaining fixtures on the sides until it engages. Tug on the casing to check if it is properly locked in place.

Storage compartments inside the cargo bay

Sedan

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following storage spaces can be found in the cargo bay:

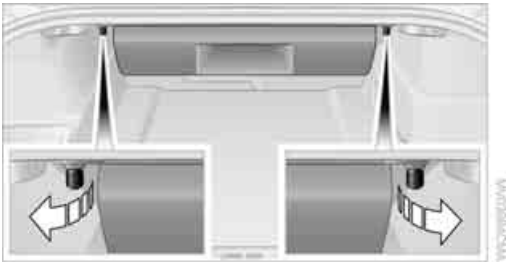
- ▷ Left storage compartment, e.g. for storing a box of cleaning tissues or up to 12 CD jackets, depending on vehicle equipment version
- ▷ Net* for securing smaller objects, to be attached to the fixtures on the floor panel
- ▷ Hooks for hanging up, e.g., shopping bags or tote bags
- ▷ Rubber strap on the left trim panel for securing small objects such as a folding umbrella
- ▷ Net for small objects on the right trim panel of the cargo bay
- ▷ Retaining straps next to the rear lashing eyes, e.g. for securing an umbrella
- ▷ Folding, removable box* under the floor panel, e.g. for wet or dirty items
- ▷ Stowage compartment under the floor panel
- ▷ Insertable dividers* and removable storage tray for the storage compartment under the floor panel
- ▷ Drawer for storing small items. Pull the handle firmly to release the drawer. If necessary, you can pull out the drawer entirely, refer to the information below

⚠ Do not drive or close the luggage compartment lid while the drawer is pulled out.
On uphill gradients, release the drawer with caution, otherwise it could slide out on its own and cause injury.
Do not exceed a maximum load of 11 lbs/5 kg for the drawer, otherwise damage could result.◀

Removing the drawer

1. Push the drawer all the way in.
2. Turn the catches on the left and right all the way out.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG



3. Remove the drawer by pulling it down and backwards.

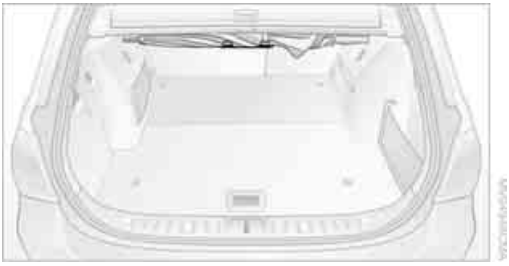
Reinserting the drawer

1. Hook the guides of the drawer into the front of the yellow guide aids on the bottom of the cargo bay.
2. Insert the catches into the mounts on the bottom of the cargo bay.
3. Turn the catches on the left and right all the way in.

Sports Wagon

The following storage spaces can be found in the cargo bay:

▷ Umbrella holder on the bottom of the partition net casing



▷ Rubber strap on the left and right trim panel for securing small objects such as a folding umbrella

▷ Hooks for hanging up shopping bags or tote bags, for example, on the left and right-hand sides of the cargo bay

▷ Net for small objects on the right trim panel of the cargo bay

▷ Stowage compartment under the floor panel

CarManuals2.com

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, other storage spaces can be found in the cargo bay:

▷ Net* for securing smaller objects, to be attached to the fixtures on the floor panel

▷ Net* on the left side trim of the cargo bay instead of the rubber strap

▷ Reversible cargo area floor panel with integrated plastic cover* for cargo bay or bumper

▷ Folding, removable box* under the floor panel, e.g. for wet or dirty items

▷ Insertable dividers* and removable storage tray for the storage compartment under the floor panel

Folding up the floor panel

⚠ Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of 55 lbs/25 kg for the storage compartment under the floor panel, otherwise damage could result.◀

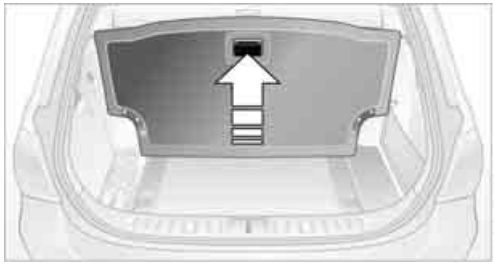
Sedan

Press the floor panel against the ceiling of the cargo bay; a locking device holds the floor panel in place. To detach the floor panel, pull it out of the locking device.

Equipment version with drawer:

Take the retaining strap on the right-hand side of the drawer out of the bracket and use it to fix the floor panel in place.

Sports Wagon



Fold up the floor panel and take it out or lean it forward.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Lashing eyes

You will find lashing eyelets in the cargo bay for securing luggage items with nets or tensioning straps, refer to page 124.

Ski bag*

The ski bag is designed for safe, clean transport of up to 4 pairs of standard skis or up to 2 snowboards.

With the ski bag you can stow skis with a length of up to 6 ft 10 in/2.10 m. When skis of 6 ft 10 in/ 2.10 m length are loaded, the overall capacity of the ski bag is reduced due to its tapered design.

Loading

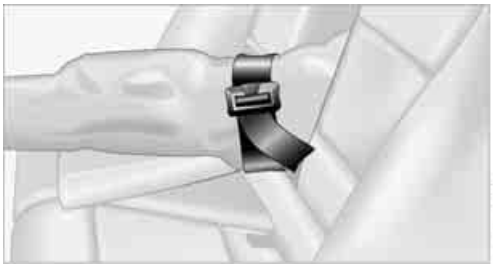
1. Fold down the center armrest.
2. Press the button, reach into the recess and fold down the cover.

3. Open the Velcro fastener, spread the ski bag between the front seats and insert the skis or snowboards.
   The zip fastener makes objects in the ski bag easier to reach.
4. Insert the latch plate of the ski bag's retaining strap in the center belt buckle.

CarManuals2.com

Only place clean skis in the ski bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

Securing cargo



After loading, secure the ski bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

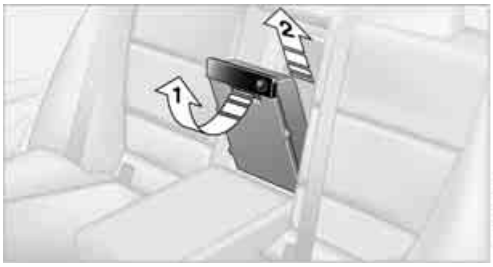
Secure the ski bag in the manner described, otherwise it could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving.◀

To store the ski bag, perform the steps described for loading in reverse order.

Removing the ski bag

The ski bag can be completely removed, e.g. for faster drying or to allow you to use other inserts.

1. Fold down the center panel in the rear seat backrest.
2. Pull the handle, arrow **1**.



3. Pull out the insert, arrow **2**.

For more information on the various inserts available, contact your BMW center.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Driving tips

This section provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

Things to remember when driving

Break-in period

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. Please follow the instructions below in order to achieve the optimal service life and economy of operation for your vehicle.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed an engine speed of 4500 rpm or a road speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kick-down mode.

After driving 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Engine and vehicle speeds can be gradually increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive cautiously during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive cautiously during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

Saving fuel

The fuel consumption of your vehicle depends on several factors. You can lower fuel consumption and the environmental impact by taking certain measures, adjusting your driving style and having the vehicle serviced regularly.

Remove any unneeded cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove any mounted parts after you have finished using them

Remove unneeded additional mirrors, the roof rack and the rear luggage rack after use. Mounted parts affect the vehicle's aerodynamics and increase fuel consumption.

CarManuals2.com

Close the windows and glass roof

An open glass roof or window causes higher air resistance and thus increases fuel consumption.

Check tire inflation pressure regularly

Check the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before embarking on a long journey, and correct it if necessary.

Low tire inflation pressure causes higher rolling resistance and thus increases fuel consumption and tire wear.

Set off immediately

Do not let the engine warm up while the car is still standing, but set off immediately at moderate engine speed. This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Drive defensively

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking maneuvers. To do so, keep an adequate distance to the forward vehicle. A defensive and smooth driving style keeps fuel consumption down.

Avoid high engine speeds

Only use first gear when setting off. In second and higher gears, accelerate without hesitation or pauses. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Coasting

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and coast to a stop in the highest applicable gear.

On a downhill slope, take your foot off the accelerator and coast in a suitable gear.

CarManuals2.com

The fuel supply is interrupted when coasting.

Switch off the engine during lengthy stops

Switch off the engine when stopping for lengthy periods, e.g. at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestions. You achieve fuel savings even if standing time is as short as approx. 4 seconds.

Switch off functions you do not need at the moment

Functions such as the air conditioner and the seat or rear window heating draw large amounts of power and consume additional fuel. Especially in city traffic and in stop and go driving they have a considerable impact. Therefore, switch these functions off when they are not really needed.

Have the vehicle serviced

Have the vehicle serviced regularly to achieve good economy and a long vehicle life. BMW recommends having the vehicle serviced at a BMW center. Also note the BMW service system, refer to page 226.

General driving notes

Close the luggage compartment lid/ tailgate

Operate the vehicle only when the luggage compartment lid/tailgate and rear window are closed. Otherwise, exhaust fumes could enter the interior of the vehicle.◀

If the vehicle must be driven with the luggage compartment lid/tailgate open:

1. Close all windows and the glass roof.
2. Greatly increase the air volume of the automatic climate control system, refer to page 102.

Hot exhaust system

In all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated in the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed adjacent to various sections of the exhaust system, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking, take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, with the risk of serious personal injuries and property damage. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes. Otherwise there is a risk of burns.◀

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This situation, known as hydroplaning, means that the tire can completely lose contact with the road surface, so that neither the car can be steered nor the brake be properly applied.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The risk of hydroplaning increases with declining tread depth on the tires, refer also to Minimum tread depth on page 218.

Driving through water

Drive through water on the road only if it is not deeper than 1 ft/30 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

CarManuals2.com

Use the parking brake on inclines

On inclines, do not hold the vehicle for a lengthy period using the clutch; use the parking brake instead. Otherwise greater clutch wear will result.◀

For more information about the drive-off assistant, refer to page 88.

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations in which this is necessary. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal, combined with sounds from the hydraulic circuits, indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

Hills

To prevent overheating and the resulting reduced efficiency of the brake system, drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Even light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, all the way to first gear if necessary. This strategy helps you avoid placing excessive loads on the brake system. Downshifting in manual mode of the automatic transmission, refer to page 59.

Never drive with the clutch held down, with the transmission in idle or with the engine switched off; otherwise, engine braking action will not be present or there will be no power assistance to the brakes or steering. Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area around the pedals, otherwise pedal function could be impaired.◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

When the vehicle is parked

Condensation forms while the automatic climate control is in operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Before driving into a car wash

For general information about taking care of your BMW, refer to the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Sports Wagon: rear window wiper

Driving through an automatic car wash can result in damage to the rear window wiper. If necessary, ask the operator of the car wash about protective measures you should take.

With convenient access and automatic transmission

Insert the remote control into the ignition switch.
The engine can be switched off when the selector lever is in position N. Refer also to page 37.

Cargo loading

⚠ To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. This can ultimately result in a sudden blow-out.◀

⚠ Make sure that no liquids are spilled or leak from their containers in the cargo bay, as this could result in damage to the vehicle.◀

Determining loading limit

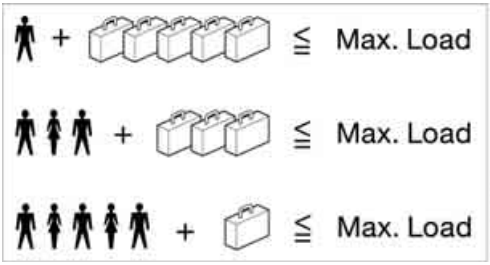
1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

   ⚠ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, overloading can result in damage to the vehicle and unstable driving conditions.◀

CarManuals2.com

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs:
   1,400 lbs. minus 750 lbs. = 650 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



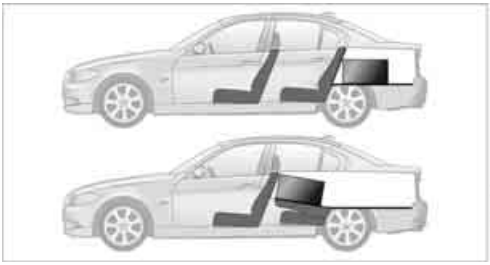
The permissible load is the total of the weight of occupants and cargo/luggage. The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

Stowing cargo

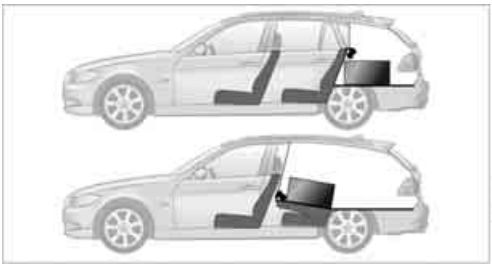
- ▷ Position heavy objects as low and as far forward as possible, ideally directly behind the respective seat backrests.
- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.
- ▷ For very heavy cargo when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each safety belt in the opposite buckle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Sedan

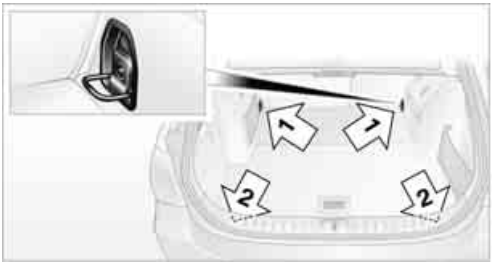


Sports Wagon



- Use the partition net to protect passengers, refer to page 114. Make sure that objects cannot penetrate the partition net.
- Do not stack cargo higher than the upper edge of the backrests.
- Place protective material around any objects which could bump against the rear window while the vehicle is in motion.

Securing cargo



- Secure smaller and lighter items using retaining straps, a cargo bay net* or draw straps*.
- Heavy-duty cargo straps* for securing larger and heavier objects are available at your BMW center. Four lashing eyes are provided for attaching the cargo straps. Two are located on the cargo bay sidewalls **1**, two more are on the rear cargo bay panel **2**.
  Please comply with the information supplied with the cargo straps.

Always position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endanger the car's occupants, for example if sudden braking or swerving is necessary.
Never exceed either the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 245, as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also place you in violation of traffic safety laws.
Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car, since they could be thrown around, for example as a result of heavy braking, sudden swerves, etc., and endanger the occupants.◀

Roof-mounted luggage rack*

A special rack system is available as an option for your BMW. Comply with the directions given in the installation instructions.

Mounting points

The mounting points are located in the roof/ along the roof rails*.

Loading roof-mounted luggage rack

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.
You should therefore always remember not to exceed the approved roof load capacity, the

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

approved gross vehicle weight or the axle loads when loading the rack.

You can find the applicable data under Weights on page 245.

The roof load must be distributed uniformly and should not be too large in area. Heavy items should always be placed at the bottom. Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for raising the glass roof, and that objects do not project into the opening path of the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.

CarManuals2.com

Fasten roof-mounted cargo correctly and securely to prevent it from shifting or falling off during the trip.

Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and specify your route so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

CarManuals2.com

Starting the navigation system*

Your navigation system can use satellites to ascertain the precise position of your vehicle and guide you reliably to any destination you enter.

CarManuals2.com

Navigation DVD

The navigation system requires a special navigation DVD. You can obtain the latest version at your BMW center.

Inserting navigation DVD

Use the lower drive for navigation DVDs.

1. Insert the navigation DVD with the labeled side up.
   The navigation DVD is pulled in automatically.
2. Wait for several seconds to allow the contents of the DVD to be read in.

Removing navigation DVD

1. Press button **1**.
   The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

If the DVD is not ejected, the drive may be blocked. In this case, a message will appear on the Control Display.

Display in the assistance window

You can display the route or the current position in the assistance window. This display remains visible even if you change to another application.

1. Move the controller to the right to enter the assistance window.

2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select the desired route view or "Current position".

4. Press the controller.

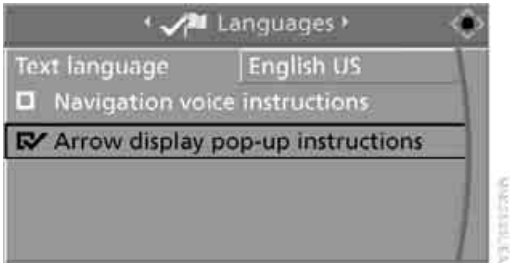
Displaying arrow display in map view*

When the navigation system suggests a change in direction, the arrow display appears briefly.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller until "Language / Units" is selected and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Arrow display pop-up instructions" and press the controller.



The arrow view is displayed in the assistance window.

CarManuals2.com

Destination entry

In entering your destination you can select from the following options:

- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Entering a destination by voice commands*, refer to page 134
- ▷ Selecting destination using information, refer to page 136
- ▷ Selecting destination from a list, refer to Destination list, page 137
- ▷ Selecting destination from address book, refer to page 138
- ▷ Selecting home address, refer to page 140

After selecting your destination you can proceed to start the destination guidance, refer to page 143.

You can also store a navigation destination on the programmable memory keys, refer to page 21.

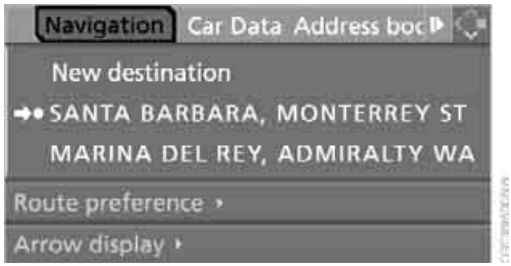
⚠ Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Otherwise, vehicle occupants and other road users may be endangered.◀

Opening navigation

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to call up "Navigation".

3. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.



The following is displayed on the Control Display:

- ▷ The arrow or map view during destination guidance
- ▷ The destination list when destination guidance is switched off

Entering a destination manually

The system's word-matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns, refer to page 142. This allows you to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically so that stored names can be called up quickly.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
"New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.

3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

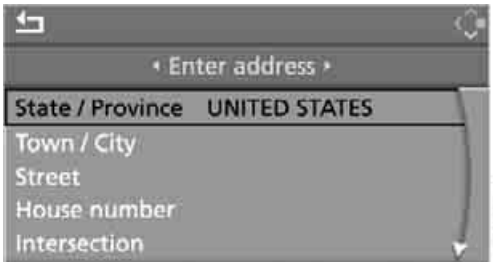
The system also supports you with the following features:

▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town or city.

▷ You can skip the entry of country and locality if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Selecting country

1. Select "State / Province" or the country displayed and press the controller.
The list of available countries appears on the display.

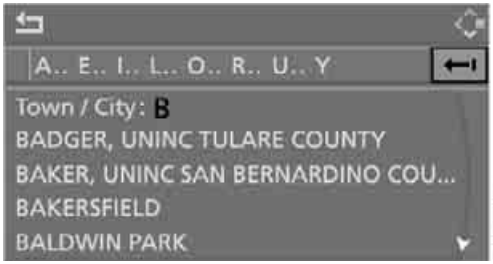


2. Select the country of destination and press the controller.

At least the town/city of the destination or its zip code must be entered in order to start the destination guidance.

Entering destination by town/city name

1. Select "Town / City" or the town/city displayed and press the controller.
2. Select the starting letter and press the controller.
A list of all towns/cities starting with this letter appears on the Control Display.
3. Delete letters, if necessary:



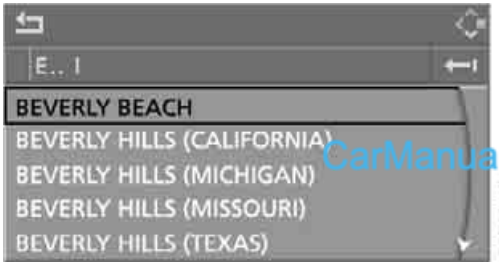
▷ To delete individual numbers or letters: Move the controller towards the right to select ⟵, and press the controller.

▷ To delete all numbers or letters: Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵, and press the controller for a longer period.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

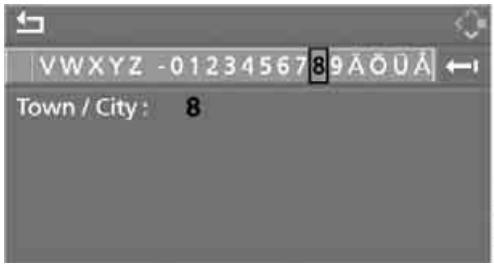
4. If necessary, enter more letters.
   The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.
   ▷ To enter spaces, if necessary:
   Select the _ symbol and press the controller.

5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until the city or town name is selected from the list and press the controller.



Entering destination by zip code

1. Select "Town / City" and press the controller.
2. Enter the zip code:
   Select the desired digits and press the controller.



   ▷ To enter spaces:
   Select the _ symbol and press the controller.
   ▷ To delete individual numbers or letters:
   Move the controller towards the right to select ⟵, and press the controller.
   ▷ To delete all numbers or letters:
   Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵, and press the controller for a longer period.
3. Select the zip code and press the controller.
   The corresponding destination is displayed.
4. Move the highlight marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering street, house number and intersection

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the street displayed and press the controller.
2. Enter the street.
   The street is entered in the same manner as the town or city.

The intersection is entered in the same way as the street.

Entering a street without entering a town/city

You can also enter a street without specifying a town/city. In this case, all streets of the same name in the designated country are offered. The corresponding town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, you can negate this entry. This could be helpful in instances where the desired street does not exist in the entered town/city because it belongs to another suburb, for example.

1. Move the highlight marker to the uppermost field.
   The ↩ arrow is selected.

2. Turn the controller to the right until you see a request to enter a street in the country, then press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

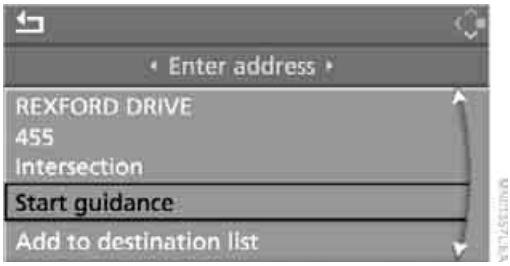
3. Switch to the second field from the top and enter the street.

Entering a house number

You can enter any house number stored for the street on the navigation DVD.

1. Select "House number" and press the controller.
2. To enter the house number:
   Select the desired digits and press the controller.
3. Move the highlight marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until the house number is selected and press the controller.

Starting destination guidance with manual destination entry



▷ Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.
Destination guidance starts immediately.

▷ If you do not want to start destination guidance right away:
Select "Add to destination list" and press

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

the controller.
The destination is stored in the destination list, refer to page 137.

Entering a destination by voice commands*

You can enter a desired destination via the voice command system. During the destination input, you can switch between voice entry and entry via iDrive at any time. To do so, reactivate the voice command system if necessary.

You can have the possible commands read aloud via ›Options‹.◀

1. Press the button on the steering wheel or in the center console.
2. ›Enter address‹

Selecting country

1. Wait for the system to ask for the country of destination.
2. Say the name of the destination country.

Say the name of the destination country in the language of the voice command system.

Entering a destination

The destination can be spelled or entered as an entire word.

Spelling the destination

To enter a destination, spell it in the way it is commonly spelled in the destination country. Pronounce the letters smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphases and pauses.

1. To spell the name of a town/city: Say at least the first three letters of the town/city. The more letters you say, the more accurately the system will recognize the town/city.

The system can suggest up to 20 destinations that meet your entries. Up to 6 entries at a time appear on the Control Display.

The system suggests a location.

2. Select location:
   - To select highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - To select other town/city: ›No‹
   - To select an entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - To show other entries in the list: ›Next page‹
   - To respell the town/city: ›Repeat‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering the destination as an entire word*

The names of towns/cities and streets located in the region in which the language of the voice command system is spoken can be entered as an entire word.

Example: to enter a U.S. destination as an entire word, the system language must be English.
Speak smoothly and at normal volume, and avoid excessive emphases and pauses.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Wait for the system to ask for the town/city of destination.
2. Say the name of the destination town/city.

   The system can suggest up to 6 destinations that fit your entries.

The system suggests a location.

3. Select location:
   - ▷ To select highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ To select other town/city: ›No‹
   - ▷ To select an entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - ▷ To re-enter the town/city: ›Repeat‹
   - ▷ To enter the town/city by spelling: ›Spell‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

▷ Identical-sounding towns/cities that cannot be distinguished by the system are compiled in a separate list and shown as a destination followed by three dots.
If applicable, select this entry with ›Yes‹. Then select the desired town/city from that list.◀

Entering street and house number

The street is entered in the same way as the destination town/city.

To enter the house number:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.

House numbers of up to 4 digits can be entered. Say the house number as individual digits.

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Storing destinations

Destinations are added to the destination list or can be stored in the address book.

›Add to destination list‹ or
›Add to address book‹

Map-guided destination selection

If you only know the location of the town or street of destination, you can enter the destination using a map. You can use the cross-hairs to select the destination on the map and then transfer it for destination guidance.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
   "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.

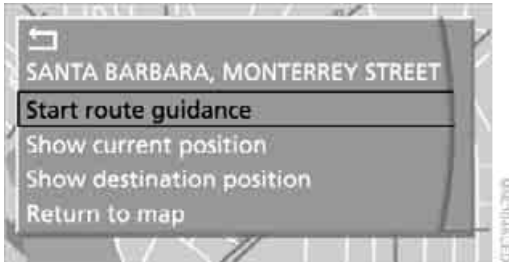
3. Select "Input map" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

A section of a map is displayed on the Control Display:

- ▷ During destination guidance, around the current destination
- ▷ With the destination guidance deactivated, around the last destination entered

4. Select the destination with the cross-hairs.
   - ▷ To change the scale: turn the controller.
   - ▷ To move the map: move the controller in the desired direction.
     The controller can be moved to the left, right, forwards and backwards.
5. Press the controller to transfer the destination for destination guidance or to store it.
   The selected destination and other menu items are displayed.
6. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ "Start route guidance" starts destination guidance.
   - ▷ "Show current position" places your current position at the center of the map.
   - ▷ "Show destination position" places the current destination at the center of the map.
   - ▷ "Return to map" changes back to the "Input map".
   - ▷ Exit the menu.



7. Press the controller.

The map for destination entry can also be called up in the map display:
Select the ⊞ symbol and press the controller.

Selecting destination using information

You can have a list of selected destinations displayed, e.g. hotels, sights or hospitals, and transfer them for destination guidance.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Select "Information" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Select location:
   - ▷ "On destination"
   - ▷ "On location"
   - ▷ "On a new destination"

4. Press the controller.
5. Make your selection, e.g. "Hotels and restaurants", and press the controller.
6. Enter search criteria if necessary, e.g. the maximum distance from your location.
7. Select "<Start search>" and press the controller.
   Destinations are shown on the Control Display.

8. Select a destination and press the controller.

   The scope of information and symbols depends on the particular navigation DVD you are using.◀
9. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To transfer the address to the destination list and start destination guidance:
     Select the ➡● symbol and press the controller.
   - ▷ To establish a telephone connection:
     Select the symbol and press the controller.
   - ▷ To display additional destinations:
     Select the ◀ ▶ symbol and press the controller.
   - ▷ To start a new search:
     Select the symbol and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Symbols in the map display

If you select the hotel category, for example, and start a search, hotels appear on the map as symbols.

To hide the symbols in the map display:

1. Select the i symbol and press the controller.

2. Select "Hide map icons" and press the controller.

The symbols are hidden.

To show the symbols:
Select "Show map icons" and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Destination list

CarManuals2.com

The last 20 destinations entered into the system are shown in the destination list. You can call up these destinations and transfer them for

destination guidance.
If you are planning a longer journey, for example, you can store all the destinations you wish to drive to in the destination list in advance, refer to Entering a destination manually on page 130.

Select "Navigation" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

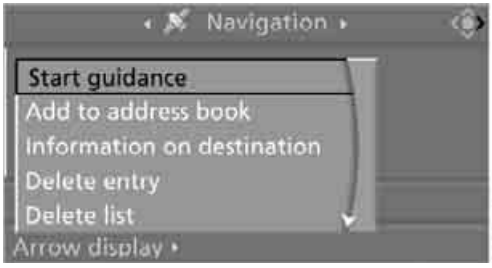
The destination last entered is listed first in the destination list.

➡● This symbol identifies the current destination during destination guidance.

To show other destinations in the destination list:
Turn the controller.

Transferring destination for destination guidance

1. Select the desired destination from the destination list and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



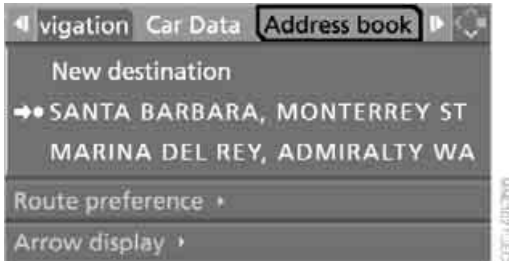
Editing destination list

1. Select the desired destination from the destination list and press the controller.
2. The selected destination can be edited:
   - ▷ To store the entry:
     Select "Add to address book".
   - ▷ To display information on the destination:
     Select "Information on destination".
   - ▷ To delete the entry:
     Select "Delete entry".
   - ▷ To delete all entries:
     Select "Delete list". The destination guidance is switched off.
   - ▷ To change an entry:
     Select "Edit". For operation, refer to Entering destination by town/city name, page 131.
3. Press the controller.

Address book

Opening address book

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.



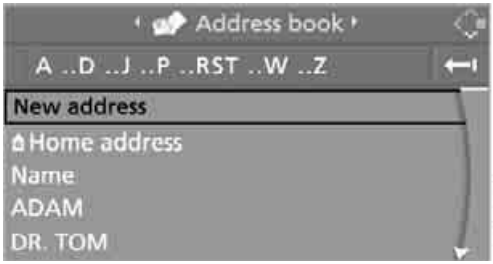
Select "Address book" and press the controller.

Storing destinations in address book

You can store approx. 100 destinations in the address book.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select "New address" and press the controller.



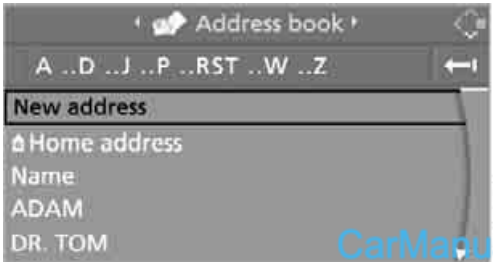
3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.
4. Enter the name and address, refer also to Entering a destination manually, page 130.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.
   The entry is stored in the address book.

You can also store a destination from the destination list in the address book, refer to page 137.

Storing current position*

The current position can be transferred to the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlight marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New address" is selected and press the controller.

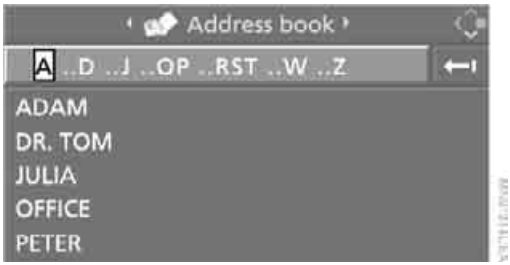


3. Select "Use current location as address" and press the controller.
   The name given can be changed. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 130.
4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

You can also enter your current position into the address book if you have left the area covered by the navigation DVD. In this case, you must enter a name.

Selecting destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
   The stored entries appear on the Control Display.



2. Select the entry and press the controller.

To start destination guidance:
Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Changing destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.

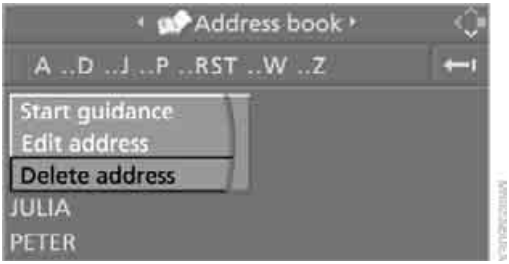
CarManuals2.com

3. Select "Edit address" and press the controller.

4. Change entry.
   For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 130.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

Deleting individual destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Delete address" and press the controller.



Deleting all destinations from address book

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Delete data" is selected and press the controller.

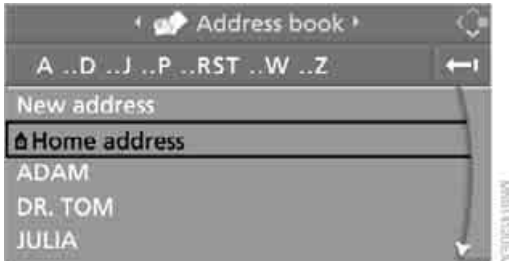
6. Select "Delete address book" and press the controller.
7. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Home address

You can store your current position or the current destination as the home address in the address book. This entry occupies the second position in the address book.

Storing home address

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlight marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Home address" is selected and press the controller.



3. Select "Use current location as address" or "Save current destination" during destination guidance and press the controller.
4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Using home address as destination

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Changing home address

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Edit address" and press the controller. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 130.

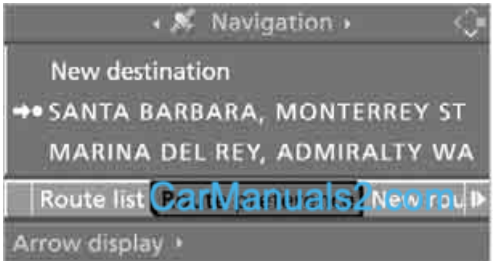
Route selection

You can influence the calculated route by choosing certain route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like during destination entry or during destination guidance.

The route is planned according to fixed rules. The type of road is taken into account, e.g. whether it is a highway or a winding road. The road types are stored on the navigation DVD. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.

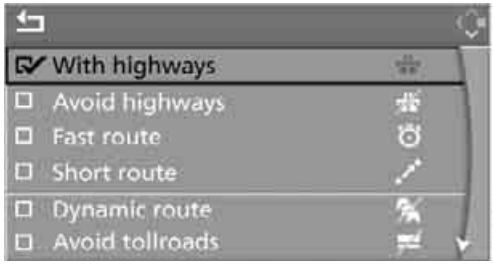
Changing route criteria

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlight marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route preference" is selected and press the controller.



The various criteria are shown on the Control Display.

3. Select a route criterion for the route:
   - ▷ "With highways"
     Highways and major traffic arteries are given priority.
   - ▷ "Avoid highways"
     Highways are avoided as far as possible.
   - ▷ "Fast route"
     Fast route, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads
   - ▷ "Short route"
     Short route, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be
4. Press the controller.



The route criterion is selected.

5. If necessary, select an additional route criterion and then press the controller:
   - ▷ "Dynamic route"
     Automatic rerouting due to traffic obstructions. Depending on road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the guided route may lead through the traffic obstruction.
   - ▷ "Avoid tollroads"
     Toll roads are avoided as far as possible.
   - ▷ "Avoid ferries"
     Ferries are avoided as far as possible.

To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

The route criteria can also be changed in the arrow or map display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Select the symbol for the route criterion and press the controller.
2. Select a route criterion and press the controller.

If the "Avoid highways", "Avoid tollroads" or "Avoid ferries" route criteria are selected, route calculation may take considerably longer.◀

CarManuals2.com

Word-matching principle

The system's word-matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of towns or streets. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored on the navigation DVD as the basis for instant response. The benefits for you include:

- Names of towns entered may differ from the official versions if you are using a spelling that is customary in another country.

  Example:

  Instead of the German spelling "München" you can also enter the English spelling "Munich" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".
- When you are entering the names of towns and streets the system will complete them automatically as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.
- The system offers only those letters for selection of name entries that are stored on the navigation DVD. Thus, entry of erroneous or unregistered names is impossible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

Via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
2. Select the destination from the destination list and press the controller or enter a new destination, refer to page 130.

3. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

After the route has been calculated, destination guidance is indicated by arrows or a map display on the Control Display.

Destination guidance can also be started in the arrow or map display:
Select the ➡● symbol and press the controller.

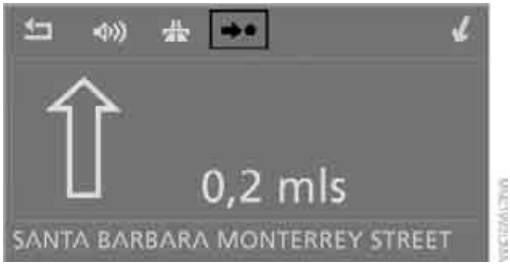
During destination guidance, you can operate other equipment items at any time via iDrive. You will be notified in time of any necessary change of direction by means of spoken instructions and the display of the direction arrows.

Via programmable memory keys

1 ... 6 Press the key on which the desired destination has been stored, refer also to page 21.

Terminating/continuing destination guidance

In the arrow or map display



Select the ➡● symbol and press the controller.

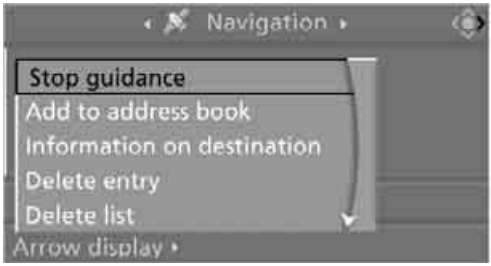
In the destination list

➡● This symbol indicates the current destination.

1. Select the current destination and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

2. Select "Stop guidance" and press the controller.



If you did not reach the destination before the end of the last journey, the following question will appear in the display at the start of the next journey:
"Continue guidance to destination?".

The destination guidance starts automatically after a short time.

To start destination guidance immediately: Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Route display

You can have the route during destination guidance displayed in various ways.

CarManuals2.com

▷ From another menu, you can switch directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Convenient call-up of menu items on page 18.◀

Arrow display

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlight marker to the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Arrow display" is selected and press the controller.

The arrow display is shown.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off
2 Selecting route criteria
3 Starting/stopping destination guidance
4 Arrow to destination as the crow flies
5 Distance to the next change of direction
6 Current location
7 Direction of travel
   - ▷ Outline of an arrow:
     Destination guidance on the calculated route
   - ▷ Solid arrow:
     Arrow points as the crow flies to the calculated route whenever the vehicle is not in an area recorded on the navigation DVD, e.g. in a parking garage.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the projected time of arrival and distance to the destination is displayed in the top or bottom line of the Control Display.

The arrows change appearance before a change of direction.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1 Street name for change of direction

2 Distance to change of direction

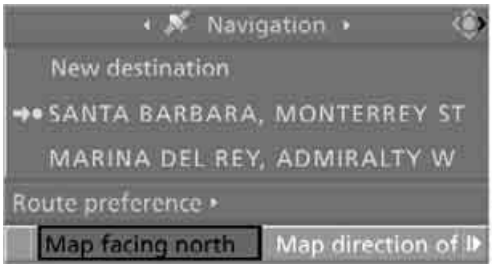
3 Change of direction

To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

Map display

You can have your current position displayed on a map. After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlight marker to the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired map display is selected:
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective"



3. Press the controller.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off

2 Starting/stopping destination guidance

3 Map-guided destination selection

4 Displaying the menu in which the information last selected can be shown/hidden, refer to Selecting destination using information, page 136

5 Changing map display
   - ▷ AN "Map facing north"
   - ▷ ▼ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ ⁄⁄\ "Perspective"

6 Changing route criteria

7 Calling up traffic information* manually

8 Arrow to destination as the crow flies

The projected time of arrival and distance to the destination is displayed in the bottom line of the Control Display.

To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

At scales of less than 250 miles/500 km, you can have the map shown facing north or toward your current direction of travel, or in perspective. At scales of 250 miles/500 km or greater, the map is always north-oriented.

Changing map display

AN ▼ ⁄⁄\

Select the corresponding symbol and press the controller.
The next map display is displayed.

Changing scale

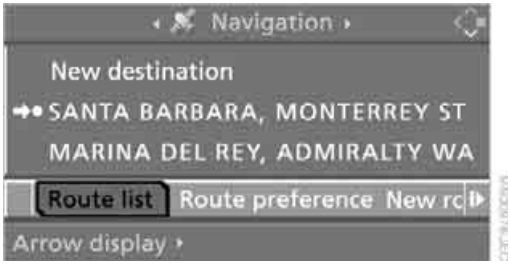
Turn the controller to adjust the scale.

Displaying towns/cities and streets along the route

You can have the roads and towns along the route displayed during destination guidance.

The distances remaining to be traveled within each section of the route are also displayed.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlight marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route list" is selected and press the controller.

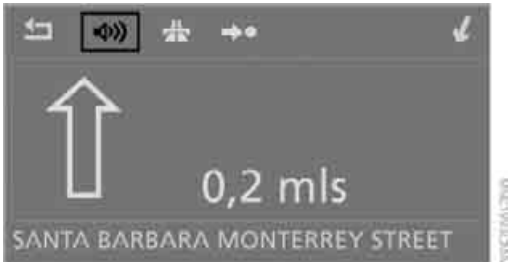


To exit from the menu:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Destination guidance through voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off

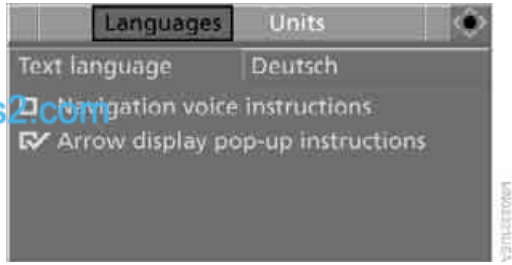


Voice instructions can be switched on or off during the destination guidance in the arrow or map display:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

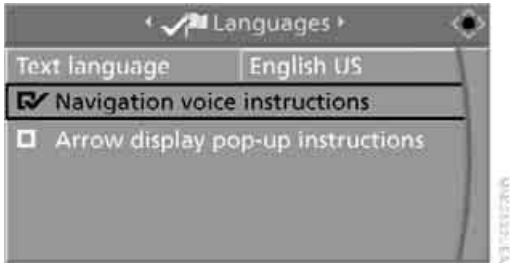
To switch the voice instructions on/off at any time:

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Language / Units" is selected and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Navigation voice instructions" and press the controller.



☑ The voice instructions are switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Repeating or canceling voice instructions

With the programmable buttons on the steering wheel, you can also execute the following functions, refer to page 50:

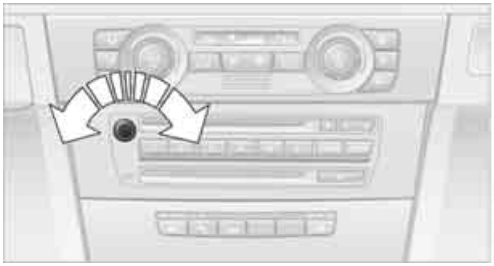
▷ Repeat the voice instruction:
Press the button.

▷ Switch voice instructions on/off:
Press the button for a longer period.

Adjusting volume for voice instructions

The volume can be adjusted only while a voice instruction is being issued.

1. Have the last voice instruction repeated, if necessary.
2. Turn the button during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.



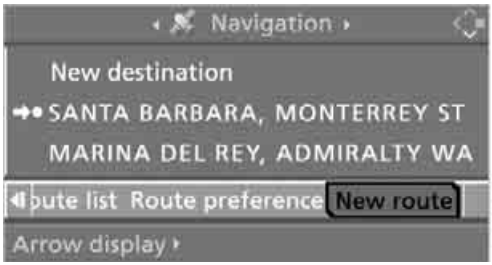
This volume is independent of the volume of the audio sources.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing a route

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlight marker to the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New route" is selected and press the controller.



3. Turn the controller to enter the desired number and press the controller.

The route is recalculated.

To exit from the menu without changing the route:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

Traffic information*

In many metropolitan areas you can receive traffic information broadcast by radio stations. The traffic conditions are monitored by traffic control centers and the traffic information is updated periodically.
During destination guidance, the traffic information relevant to the route you are planning to take is automatically shown and taken into account in route planning. Whether destination guidance is active or not, you can have the traffic information displayed in the map view or in the traffic info list.

Switching reception of traffic information on/off

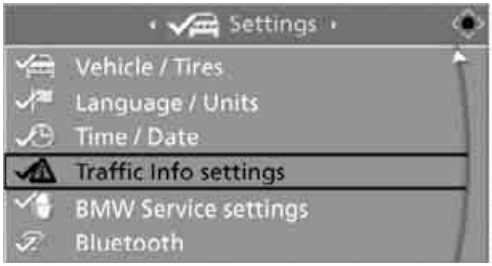
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

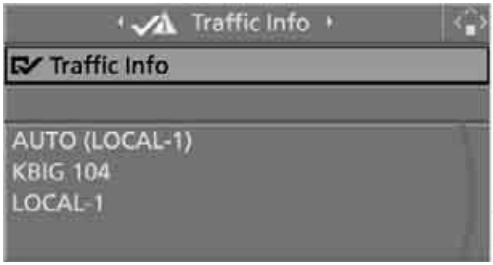
CarManuals2.com

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Traffic Info settings" is selected and press the controller.



5. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.



The traffic information can be received and displayed.

"AUTO": automatic selection of the Traffic Info station with the best reception.

Depending on the station, either the station name, frequency, local number or other information is displayed.◀

Calling up traffic information manually

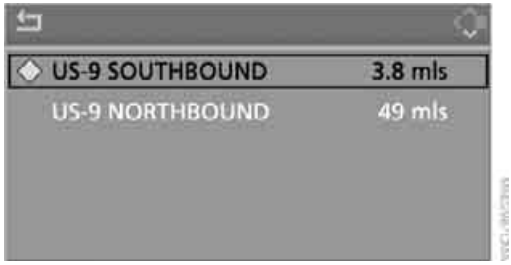
During destination guidance

During destination guidance, traffic information can be displayed in the arrow or map view.

If the symbol is shown with a red border, traffic information is available for the planned route.

Select the symbol and press the controller.

During destination guidance, traffic information items along the planned route are indicated by yellow diamonds.



Traffic information on the planned route is shown first, sorted by distance from the vehicle's current position.

With destination guidance switched off

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to call up "Navigation".

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Traffic information on the planned route is shown first, sorted by distance from the vehicle's current position.

Displaying traffic information in map display

The traffic information icons are shown in the map display up to a scale of 100 miles/200 km.

The highlighting of the stretch corresponding to the traffic report and the icons for the type of event as described below are displayed and hidden. This depends on the selected scale.

Displaying detailed traffic information

Select a traffic information item from the list and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Select the ↰ arrow and press the controller.

Traffic information icons

Traffic event displayed with map scales larger than 5 miles/10 km; arrow points in relevant direction of travel

There are several traffic events. Switch to a smaller map scale to show more detail.

Traffic light failure

Roadworks

General traffic obstruction
Transport of hazardous load
Vehicle on wrong carriageway

Danger

Low clearance

No parking

Fog

Heavy rain

Slippery road

Cross winds

Smog

Road closed

Slow traffic

Traffic backup

Stopped traffic

Icy roads

Uneven surface

Accident

Lane closure

Delay

Police checkpoint

Slow traffic or other traffic event

Stop and go traffic

Stopped traffic

Traffic events in both directions of travel

Traffic information during destination guidance

System response will vary depending on whether or not "Dynamic route" is selected, refer to page 141.

Displaying traffic obstructions

When the navigation system receives a traffic obstruction message and "Dynamic route" is not selected, you are shown certain information, such as the length of the traffic congestion, when you are approx. 25 miles/40 km away from the traffic obstruction.
The last possible detour exit is indicated just before you reach it.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

This information is displayed even if you have called up another application on the Control Display.

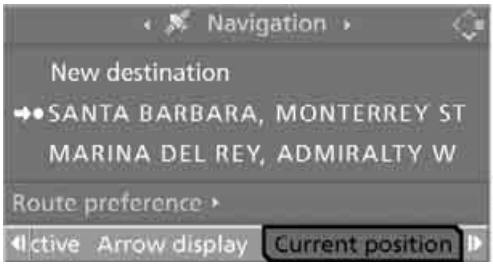
Dynamic route planning

When "Dynamic route" is selected, the route will be changed automatically in the event of a traffic obstruction. The system does not point out traffic obstructions on the original route. Depending on road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the calculated route may lead through the traffic obstruction.

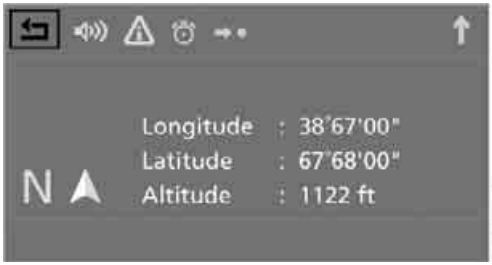
Displaying current position

You can have your current position displayed even when the destination guidance is switched off.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlight marker to the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Current position" is selected and press the controller.



The current position of your BMW is displayed.



If the navigation system is unable to identify a town or city, your current map coordinates will appear.

To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

You can also have the current position displayed on a map, refer to page 145.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

What to do if ...

What to do if ...

- a navigation DVD is inserted, but an instruction to insert the DVD appears on the Control Display?
  The navigation DVD may not be the correct DVD for the navigation system. This information is indicated on the DVD label.
- you request the current position of your vehicle, but do not receive a precise display?
  The system is unable to receive enough GPS signals at your current position due to obstructions, your current position is not yet available on your navigation DVD, or the system is in the process of calculating your current position. As a rule, reception is guaranteed when you are in the open.
- the destination guidance does not accept a destination?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. Choose a destination as close as possible to the original one.
- the destination guidance does not accept an address without the street name?
  On the navigation DVD, no downtown area can be determined for the city or town entered. Enter any street, or a destination such as the railway station in the selected town, and then start the destination guidance.
- you want to enter a destination for the destination guidance, but it is not possible to select the letters for your desired entry?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. In this case, the system will not offer you any letters to choose from. Choose a destination as close as possible to the original one.
- the system stops furnishing directions on which way to turn as you approach intersections?
  You are driving in an area that has not yet been completely recorded on the navigation DVD. Instead of an arrow indicating a turn, you will see an arrow which indicates the general direction of your planned route. Or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new recommended route.
- the navigation system does not react to entries?
  If the battery was disconnected, it takes about 10 minutes before the system is once again operational.

CarManuals2.com

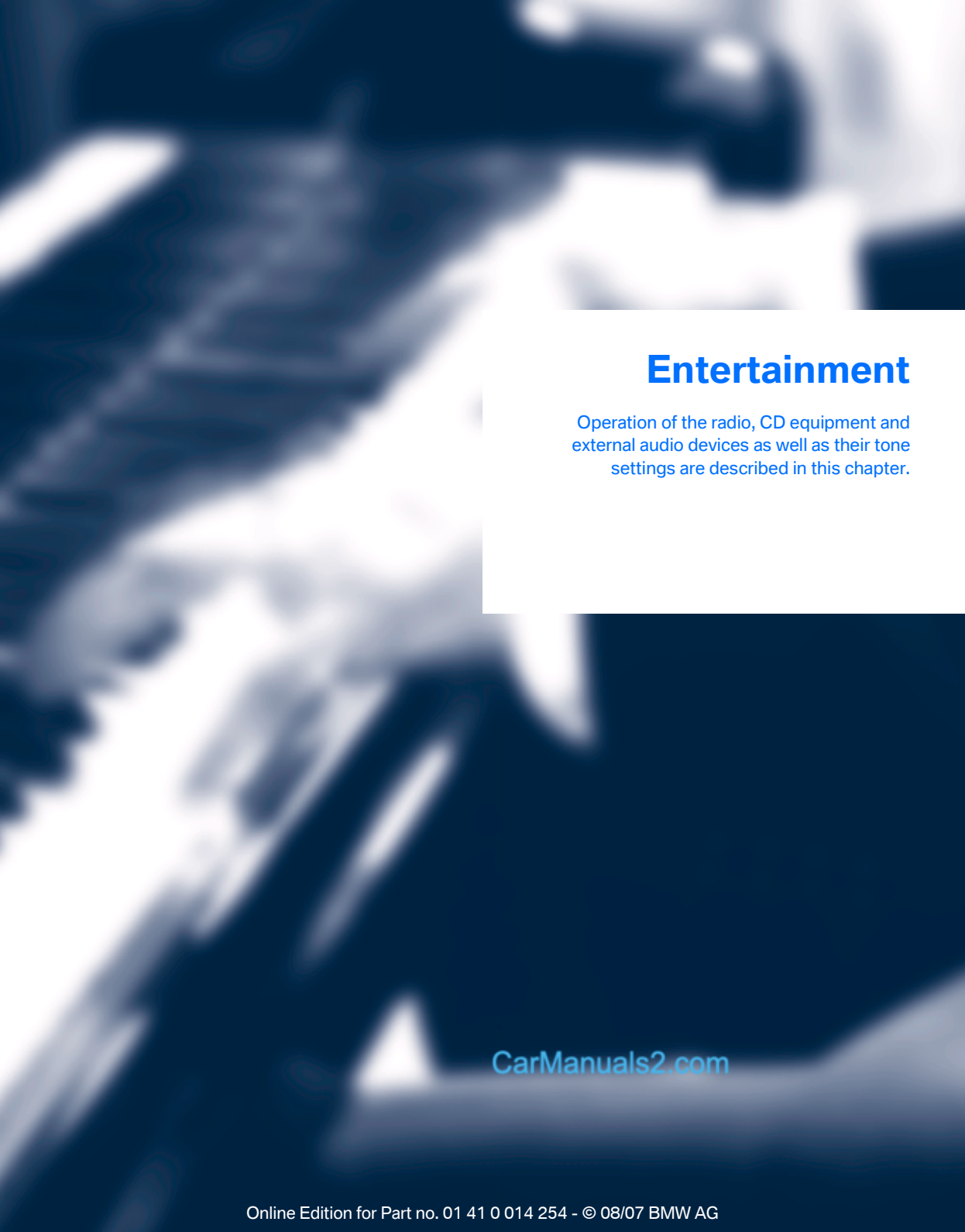
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG



Entertainment

Operation of the radio, CD equipment and external audio devices as well as their tone settings are described in this chapter.

CarManuals2.com

On/off and settings

The following audio sources have shared controls and setting options:

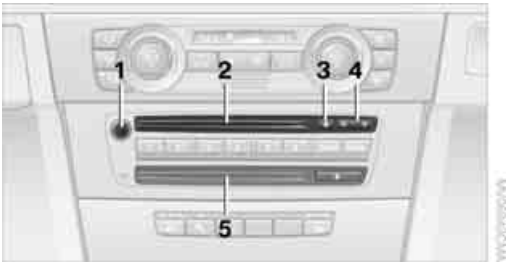
- Radio
- CD player
- CD changer*

Controls

The audio sources can be operated using:

- Buttons near the CD player
- iDrive
- Buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11
- Programmable memory keys, refer to page 21

Buttons on the CD player



1 Sound output for entertainment on/off, volume
   - Press: switch on/off.
     When you switch on the unit, the last set radio station or track is played.
   - Turn: adjust volume.

2 Drive for audio CDs

3 Eject CD.

4 Station scan/track search
   - Change radio station.
   - Select track for CD player and CD changer.

5 Drive for navigation DVD

Operation via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to call up "Entertainment".

You have the following choices:

- "FM" and "AM": radio reception
- "SAT": satellite radio*
- "CD": CD player or changer
- "AUX": AUX-In port, USB-audio interface
- "Set": depending on the audio source, other adjustments can be made, e.g. with the radio: update station with strongest reception, store station, tone control, sample stations.

▷ From another menu, you can switch directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Convenient call-up of menu items on page 18.◀

With the ignition at radio readiness or beyond, the selected audio source is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Switching on/off

In order to switch the entertainment sound output on and off:
Press button **1** on the CD player.

This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Adjusting volume

Turn knob **1** on the CD player until the desired volume is obtained.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

With the ignition at radio readiness or beyond, the setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

CarManuals2.com

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass or the speed-dependent volume increase.
The tone settings are applied to all audio sources.

With the ignition at radio readiness or beyond, the settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing tone settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.

The tone settings can also be selected if you have called up "Entertainment" in the start menu:
Select "Set" and then "Tone", pressing the controller after each selection.

Treble and bass

1. Select "Treble / Bass" and press the controller.

2. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Treble" or "Bass".

3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Balance and fader

You can adjust the volume distribution in the same manner as "Treble / Bass".

▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution

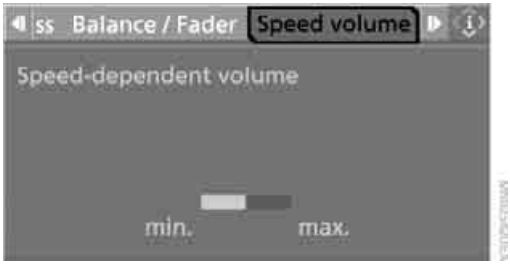
▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Speed-dependent volume control

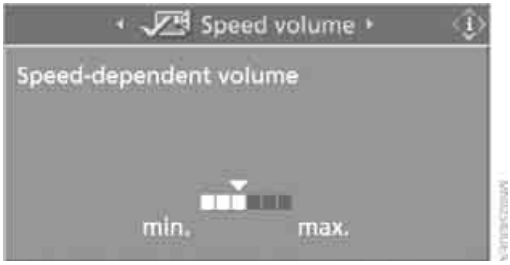
The speed-dependent volume control automatically increases the volume with increasing driving speed. You can set various stages for the increase in volume.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Select "Speed volume" and press the controller.



2. Turn the controller:
The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.



Professional LOGIC7 HiFi System*

You can select a spatial sound effect that improves the spatial acoustics in all frequency ranges.

1. Select "Surround Settings" and press the controller.

2. Select "Concert hall" or "Theater".

3. Press the controller.

LOGIC7 spatial sound is switched on.

To switch off the spatial sound effect:
Select "Off" and press the controller.

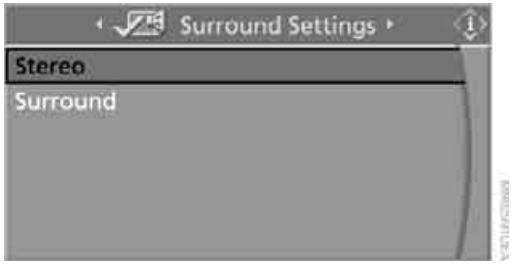
LOGIC7 and the LOGIC7 logo are registered trade marks of Lexicon, Inc., a company of the Harman International Group.

Individual High-End Audio System*

You can choose between stereo and multichannel playback, surround.

1. Select "Surround Settings" and press the controller.
2. Select "Stereo" or "Surround".

CarManuals2.com



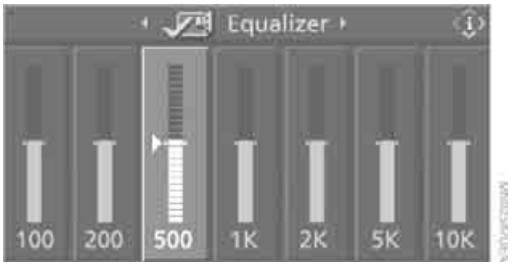
Equalizer*

You can set individual sound frequency ranges.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Select "Equalizer" and press the controller.

2. Move the controller to the left or right to select the desired frequency range.



3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default setting.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Reset" is selected and press the controller.

6. In vehicles equipped with two drives: Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Radio

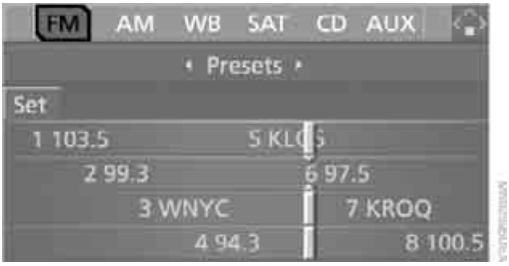
Your radio provides reception of the FM and AM wavebands.

Listening to the radio

Press the button if the sound output is switched off.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to call up "Entertainment".
3. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Select "FM" or "AM".



4. Press the controller.

Stations are shown on the Control Display on the basis of various selection criteria, e.g. "Presets".

If "Autostore" does not show a station in the AM waveband or if the displayed stations are no longer receivable, update the stations with the best reception, refer to page 161.

Changing stations

Turn the controller.

Buttons on the CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system switches to the next displayed station.
You can also change the station with the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Changing selection criteria

In addition to the stations currently displayed, you can have stations with another selection criterion displayed.

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

- "All stations"*:
  Stations that can currently be received on the "FM" waveband.
- "Autostore":
  Stations with the best reception on the "AM" waveband.
  For High Definition Radio: stations with the best reception on the "FM" waveband.
- "Presets":
  Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 162.
- "Manual":
  To set stations that can be received in addition to those already being displayed, refer to Selecting the frequency manually, page 161.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

To change the selection criterion:

1. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top.
2. Choose a selection criterion and press the controller.

Sampling stations, Scan

The stations on the current waveband are automatically sampled in succession.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

The stations are sampled.

Stop sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

Station sampling is interrupted and the selected station stays on.

Buttons on the CD player

◁ ▷ To sample stations, press the button for the corresponding direction for an extended time.

To stop scanning, press the button again.

Selecting the frequency manually

With "Manual" you can select stations that can be received in addition to those displayed.

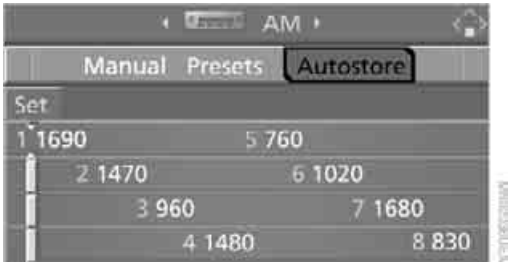
1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top.
3. Select "Manual" and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller to set a certain frequency.

Updating stations with best reception

If on a longer journey you move out of the reception range of the stations originally received, you can update the list of stations received with the strongest signals in the AM waveband.

1. Select "AM" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top.
3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.



4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.

The display of the stations with the strongest reception is updated. The frequencies of the stations are displayed.

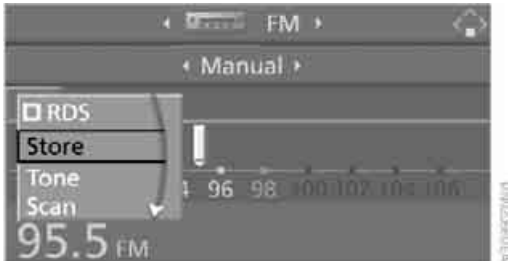
Storing stations

Via iDrive

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is chosen and press the controller.
3. Select the desired frequency or station.
   "Set" is selected.

4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

5. Select "Store" and press the controller.



   "Presets" is displayed.
6. Turn the controller until the desired memory location is selected.
7. Press the controller.
   The station is stored.

The channels of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

With the ignition at radio readiness or beyond, the stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Via programmable memory keys

You can store a station on the programmable memory keys, refer also to page 21.

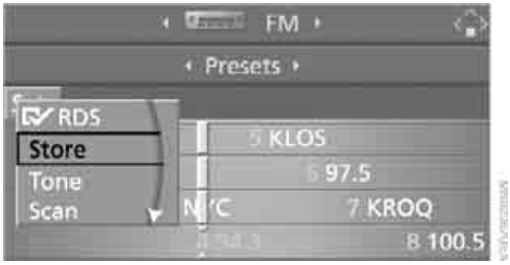
1. Select a station.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the desired key for a longer period.

Changing a memory position

1. Select "Presets" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired station.
   "Set" is selected.
3. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Select "Store" and press the controller.



5. Turn the controller until the desired memory location is selected.
   The number of the memory location appears beside the name or frequency of the station.
6. Press the controller.
   The station is stored.

RDS Radio Data System

On the FM waveband, additional information is broadcast via RDS. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. Where reception is poor or in the event of interference, it may take some time before the station names will appear in the display.

Switching RDS on/off*

1. Select "FM" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "RDS" and press the controller.

RDS is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

High Definition Radio*

Many stations transmit analog and digital signals. You can receive these stations digitally for improved sound quality.

A digital radio network must be available to be able to receive digital stations.

Switching digital radio reception on/off

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. Move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "HD radio" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Off" and press the controller.

Digital station reception is now switched on.

HD This symbol is displayed when a station is received digitally.

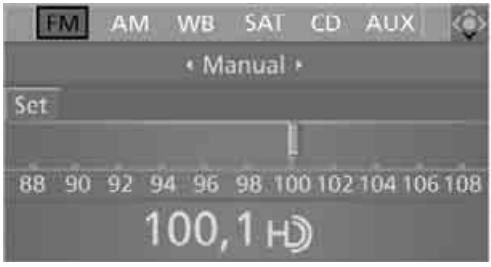
CarManuals2.com

Some stations do not transmit the digital and analog signals simultaneously. If you are in an area in which digital reception of the selected station is not possible continuously, reception will alternate between analog and digital. This can cause repetitions or interruptions. In this case it may be preferable to switch off digital reception.

Selecting the programs of a digital station*

Some stations broadcast several programs on a single frequency. To select one of these programs:

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.



2. Select "Manual" and press the controller.
3. Select a station that can be received digitally.
   HD This symbol is displayed when a station is received digitally.
4. ◁ ▷ Change to the next program of the digital station using the buttons on the radio or steering wheel.

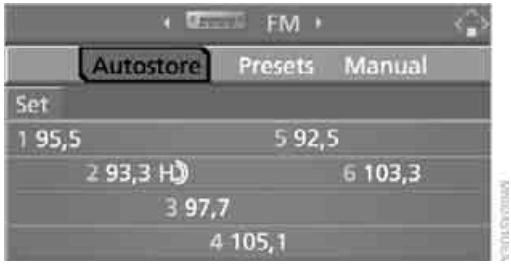
You can store a station, refer to page 162.

Updating digitally receivable stations

If on a longer journey you move out of the reception range of the stations originally received, you can update the list of stations received with the strongest signals.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.

2. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top.
3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.



4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Autostore HD" and press the controller.

The display of the digitally receivable stations is updated. This can take up to 2 minutes.

Displaying additional information

With digital stations, additional information on the current track can be displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Select the station and press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.

The information is displayed.

When you change to another digitally received station, any additional information is displayed after a brief interruption.

CarManuals2.com

Satellite radio*

You can receive over 100 different channels with high sound quality.

The channels are offered to you in predefined packages. To receive the channels of your choice, you must have the corresponding packages enabled.

With this new technology, signal losses can occur from time to time and result in audio interruptions.◀

Enabling or disabling channels

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to call up "Entertainment".
3. Select "SAT".

4. Press the controller.

The channels are displayed.
✔ These channels are enabled.

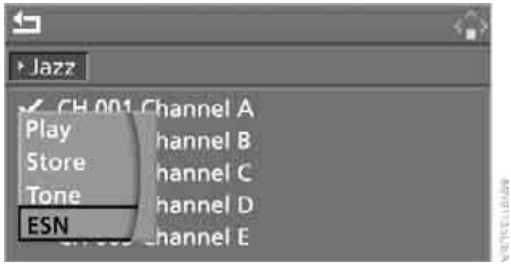
Enabling

1. Select a channel that has not yet been enabled and press the controller.
   A telephone number and the electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

   The electronic serial number is required to enable or disable.◀
2. To enable the channel:
   Dial the phone number.

Disabling

1. Select an enabled channel and press the controller.



2. Select "ESN" and press the controller.
   The electronic serial number, ESN, is displayed.

   The electronic serial number is required to disable.◀
3. To disable the channel:
   Dial the phone number.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Selecting and storing a channel

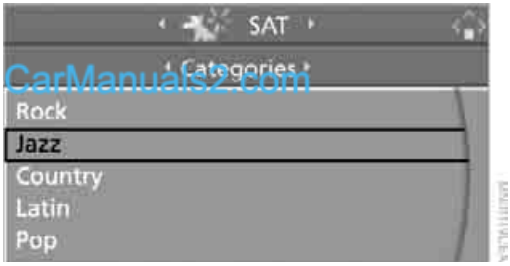
1. Select "SAT" and press the controller.

Channels and categories are displayed on the Control Display.

2. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Presets":
     Up to twelve channels you stored previously.
   - ▷ "All channels":
     All channels are displayed.
   - ▷ "Categories":
     All channels, sorted by category, e.g. news, jazz.

3. Press the controller.

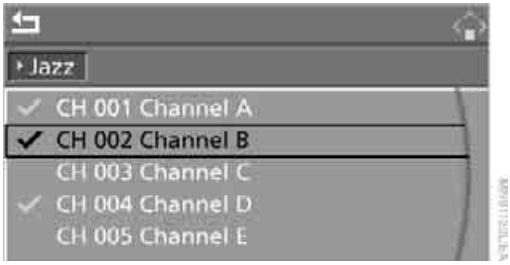
4. If "Categories" has been selected:
   Select the desired category and press the controller.



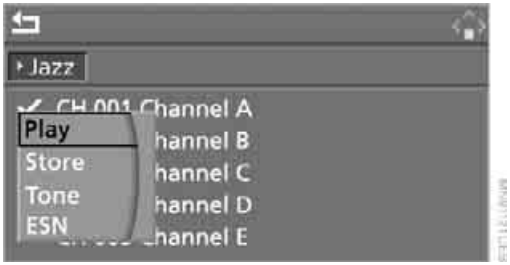
CarManuals2.com

The channels of this category are displayed.

5. ✔ Select a channel marked with this symbol.



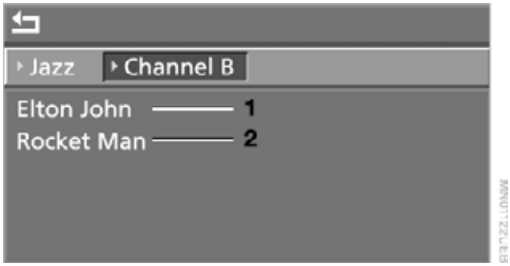
6. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
7. Select "Play" and press the controller.



Additional information

The name of the channel and additional information on the current track are displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

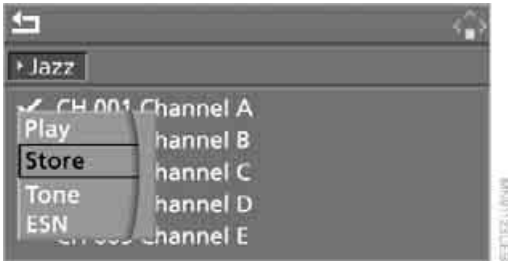


1 Artist

2 Track

Storing a channel

1. Select the desired channel.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Store" and press the controller.



"Presets" is displayed.

4. Turn the controller to select a memory location and press the controller.

The channel is stored. The channels of the last selection criterion are displayed again after a short time.

Changing channels with buttons on CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system switches to the next enabled channel.

Notes

When more than 4 seconds go by and no signal is received, a message appears on the Control Display.

Under some circumstances, e.g. depending on environmental or topographic conditions, it may not be possible to receive any signal. The satellite radio cannot influence this. A signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages, next to high-rise buildings, in the vicinity of trees, mountains or other strong sources of radio interference.
Reception usually resumes as soon as the signal becomes available again.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CD player and CD changer*

Listening to CDs

Compressed audio files*

CDs with compressed audio files, MP3s, can be played by the CD player and CD changer.

Starting the CD player

The upper drive is for audio CDs.

Insert the CD into the drive with the labeled side up.
The CD is pulled in automatically. Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on.
When playing CDs with compressed audio files, it can take the CD player approx. 1 minute to read in the data, depending on the directory structure.

To start playback when there is already a CD in the drive:

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to call up "Entertainment".
3. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Select "CD" and press the controller.

4. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the second field from the top. On cars with a CD changer, select "CD" and press the controller to start the CD player.

Playback starts automatically if the sound output is switched on.

Via programmable memory keys

You can store the CD player function on the programmable memory keys to start the CD player, refer to page 21.

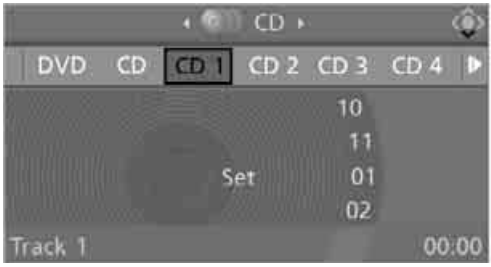
Starting the CD changer

Fill and insert the CD magazine, refer to page 173.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to call up "Entertainment".

CarManuals2.com

3. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Select "CD" and press the controller.
4. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the second field from the top. Select the desired CD and press the controller.



At the end of the last track, the next CD is selected and played.

If new CDs have been placed in the CD magazine, playback starts with the lowest CD, e.g. CD 1, track 1.

The CD magazine's load status is indicated on the Control Display.

Via programmable memory keys

You can store a CD compartment of the CD changer on the programmable memory keys to start the CD changer, refer to page 21.

Selecting a track

Buttons on the CD player

Press the button for the appropriate direction as often as necessary until the desired track is reached.
The track is displayed on the Control Display.
You can also change the track with the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

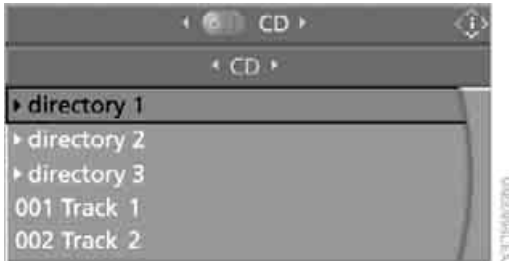
Via iDrive

CarManuals2.com

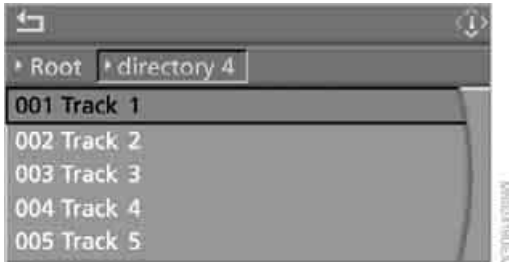
Turn the controller to select a track.

Compressed audio files*

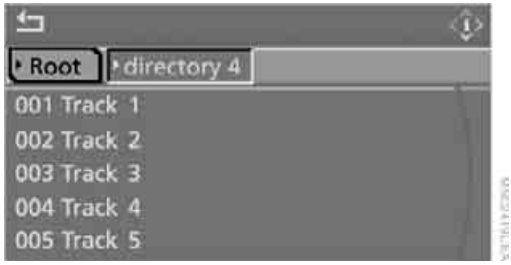
1. Select a directory, if necessary, and press the controller.



2. Select a track and press the controller.



To change the directory:
Select the directory and press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

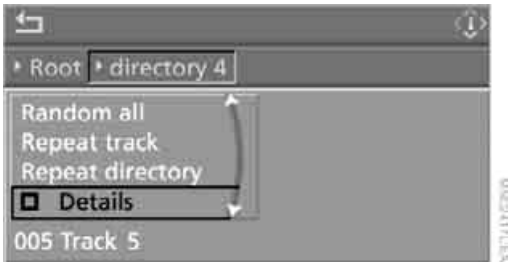
To exit from the menu:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

If the car is equipped with two CD drives, you can save specific tracks on the programmable memory keys, refer to page 21.

Displaying information about the track*

With compressed audio files, any information about the current track that has been recorded can be displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



The information is shown for the current track.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

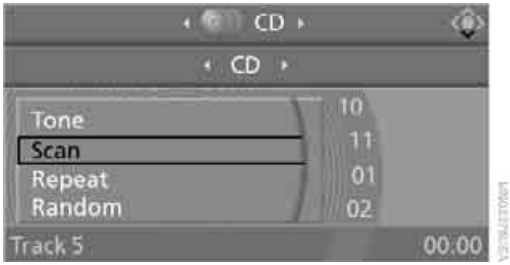
Sampling tracks, Scan

All tracks on the current CD are automatically sampled once in succession.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

CarManuals2.com

2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.



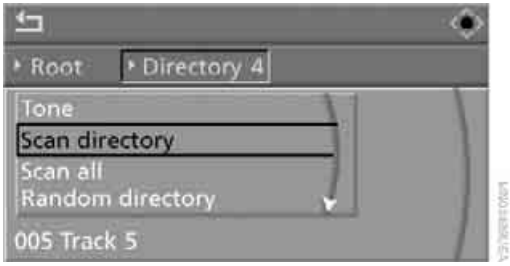
Stop sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

Track sampling is interrupted and the selected track is played on.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To sample all the tracks in the current directory, select "Scan directory" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To sample all the tracks on the CD, select "Scan all" and press the controller.



Stop sampling:

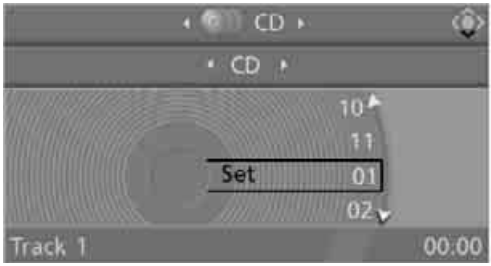
1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan directory" or "Scan all" and press the controller.

Sampling is interrupted and the selected track is retained.

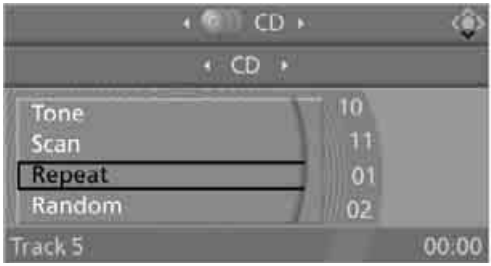
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Repeating tracks

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.



2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.



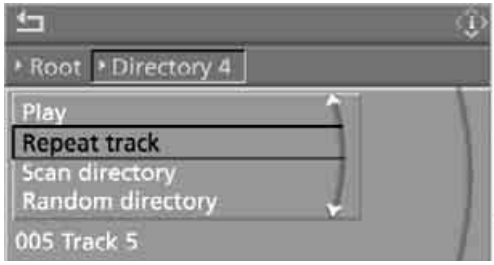
The current track on the CD is repeated.

Stop repeating:

1. Press the controller again.
2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To repeat the selected track, select "Repeat track" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To repeat all the tracks in the current directory, select "Repeat directory" and press the controller.



Stop repeating:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" or "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Random play sequence

The tracks on the current CD are played once each in random order.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To play all the tracks in the current directory in random order, select "Random directory" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To play all the tracks on the CD in random order, select "Random all" and press the controller.

Stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random directory" or "Random all" and press the controller.

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons on the CD player:

◁ ▷ Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.
The tracks can be heard, but reproduction is distorted.

CD magazine

Sedan

Sports Wagon

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is behind the left side panel in the cargo bay.

Removing the CD magazine

To insert or remove CDs from the CD magazine, you must first remove it from the CD changer:

1. Push the cover to one side, arrow **1**.
2. Press the button, arrow **2**.
   The CD magazine is ejected.

Inserting/removing CDs from the CD magazine

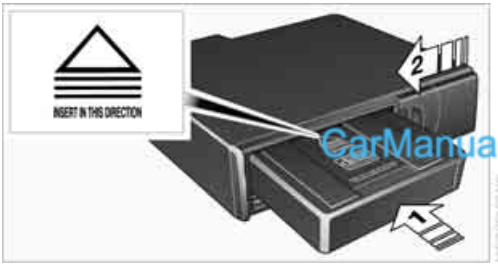
When loading CDs into or removing them from the CD magazine, hold them at their edges and do not touch the reflective signal-sensing area.

Inserting CDs:
Insert the CD in its slot with the label side on top.

Removing CDs:
Pull out the desired drawer, see arrow, and remove the CD.

CarManuals2.com

Inserting the CD magazine



Insert the CD magazine all the way in the direction of arrow **1** and close the cover, arrow **2**.

The CD changer automatically reads in the loaded CDs and is then ready for operation.

Notes

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged, otherwise severe eye damage can result.
Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat build-up and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g. Single-CDs, otherwise the CDs or the adapter can jam and will no longer eject.
Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}, otherwise the CD/DVD can jam and will no longer eject.◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check if it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions only occur with individual CDs/DVDs, one of the following factors may be the cause.

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

CarManuals2.com

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are, e.g., inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or high age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the top, with a pen designed for this purpose.

Damage prevention

Avoid leaving fingerprints, as well as dust, scratches or moisture on the CDs/DVDs.
Keep CDs/DVDs in protective sleeves or cases.
Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 120 °F /50 °C, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often copy-protected by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

Care

Clean the reflective signal side of CDs/DVDs as needed by wiping it with a commercially available cleaning tissue in straight lines from the center of the disc outwards. For more information on taking care of CDs/DVDs, please refer to the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

AUX-In port

You can connect an external audio device, for instance an MP3 player, and play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system. You can adjust the tone using iDrive.

Connecting

Lift up the center armrest.

Connection for audio playback:
TRS connector 1/8"/3.5 mm

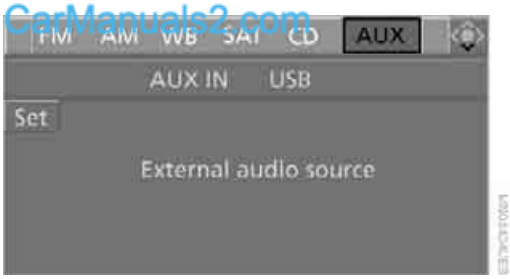
To play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system, connect the headset or line-out port of the external device to the AUX-in port.

Starting audio playback

The audio device must be switched on.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to call up "Entertainment".
3. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "AUX" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "AUX IN" and press the controller.
5. Adjust volume and tone, if necessary.

Via programmable memory keys

You can store the "AUX" function on a programmable memory key to start audio playback, refer to page 21.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

USB-audio interface*

You can connect audio devices, e.g. an iPod or a USB device (MP3 player, USB stick) to the USB-audio interface. They can be operated via iDrive.

CarManuals2.com

Standard audio formats, e.g. MP3, WMA, WAV (PCM) and AAC, and playlists in the M3U format can be played.

Due the variety of audio devices on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device will be operable on the vehicle.
Ask your BMW center about what audio devices are suitable.

Connecting

Lift up the center armrest.

1 Connection for audio playback:
TRS connector 1/8"/3.5 mm

2 USB interface

Depending on your vehicle's equipment version, it may contain a storage pouch for your audio device. The pouch is located under the center armrest.◀

iPod

To connect the iPod use the BMW cable adapter for Apple iPod. For more information, contact the BMW center or go to the Internet: www.bmw.com

To play audio tracks over the vehicle's loudspeaker system, connect the iPod to ports **1** and **2**.

The iPod's menu structure is supported by the USB-audio interface.

USB device

To connect the device, use the included flexible adapter cable to protect the USB interface and your USB device against physical damage.◀

To play audio tracks over the vehicle's loudspeaker system, connect the USB device to port **2**.

After the device is connected for the first time, the information on all tracks (e.g. artist, type of music) and the playlists are transferred from the USB device to the vehicle. This procedure may take some time. The duration depends on the USB device and the number of tracks.

During transfer, you can select the tracks using the directories and file names.

After transfer, you can call up the tracks using the information and playlists.

Information from up to four USB devices or for about 20,000 tracks can be stored on the vehicle.

If a fifth USB device is connected and if more than 20,000 tracks are to be stored, the information on existing tracks may be lost.

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.◀

Starting audio playback

Via iDrive

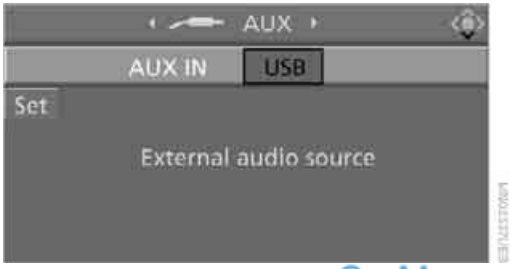
If the audio device has a device name, the name is displayed.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to call up "Entertainment".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "AUX" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "USB" or the name of the audio device and press the controller.



Playback begins with the first track.

CarManuals2.com

Via programmable memory keys

You can store the "USB" function on a programmable memory key to start audio playback, refer to page 21.

Selecting a track

You can call up the tracks using the playlists and information. With USB devices you can also call up tracks using the file directory. The tracks can be displayed if they have been stored in the Latin alphabet.

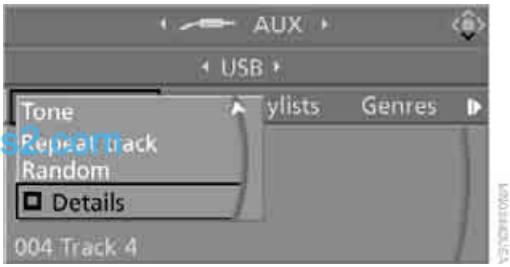
1. Make your selection, e.g. "Playlists" or "Artists", and press the controller.

2. Select a track and press the controller.

Displaying information about the track

Any information about the current track that has been recorded can be displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller during playback.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



The information is shown for the current track.

Repeating tracks

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" and press the controller.

Stop repeating:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" and press the controller.

Random play sequence

You can play the tracks in the selected list in random order, e.g. all tracks of a single artist.

CarManuals2.com

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Stop random play:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons on the steering wheel or CD player:

◁ ▷ Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Notes

⚠ Do not expose the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g. very high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the audio device. Otherwise the audio device may become damaged, which could compromise safety while driving.◀

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g. bit rates greater than 256 KBit/s, the files may not play back correctly in every case.

Notes on connecting

- ▷ The USB-audio interface acts as the power supply to the connected audio devices, provided that this is supported by the audio device. Therefore, do not connect the USB audio device to the power socket in the vehicle during operation.
- ▷ Do not forcibly connect the plug to the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB-audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard disks.
- ▷ Do not use the USB-audio interface to charge external devices.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Communications

This chapter describes how to use the telephone, BMW Assist and TeleService.

Telephoning*

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with a full mobile phone preparation package. After pairing a suitable mobile phone with the vehicle once, you can operate the mobile phone via iDrive, the buttons on the steering wheel or via voice commands.

Once a mobile phone has been paired with your vehicle, it is automatically recognized as soon as it is inside the vehicle while the engine is running or the ignition is switched on. You can store the pairing data for up to four mobile phones simultaneously. If several mobile phones are detected at the same time, the mobile phone last paired can be operated via the vehicle.

Using the telephone inside the vehicle

Using the snap-in adapter*

The so-called snap-in adapter, a holder for mobile phones, allows you to charge the mobile phone's battery and connect the mobile phone to your vehicle's outside antenna. This ensures better network reception and consistent reproduction quality. Please contact your BMW center to find out for which mobile phones there are snap-in adapters available.

CarManuals2.com

For your safety

A car phone makes life more convenient in many ways, and can even save lives in an emergency. While you should consult your mobile phone's separate Owner's Manual for a detailed description of safety precautions and information, we request that you direct your particular attention to the following:

⚠ Only make entries when the traffic situation allows you to do so. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Suitable mobile phones

Please ask your BMW center which mobile phones with Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package and/or which mobile phones are compatible with the snap-in adapter. By virtue of their particular software versions, these mobile phones support the functions described in this Owner's Manual. Malfunctions may occur with other mobile phones.

Care instructions

You can find what you need to know about caring for your mobile phone in the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure and in the mobile phone Owner's Manual.

Operating options

You can operate the mobile phone* using:

- ▷ Buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 10
- ▷ iDrive, refer to page 187
- ▷ Voice commands, refer to page 193
- ▷ Programmable memory keys, refer to page 21

Avoid operating a mobile phone recognized by the vehicle via the mobile phone's keypad, otherwise malfunctions may result.

Making phone calls with the BMW Assist system*: BMW Assist calls

You can use the BMW Assist System via the hands-free unit for BMW Assist calls.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

When the status information "BMW Assist" or "BMW Service" is displayed in "Communication", only BMW Assist calls are possible.

It may not be possible to establish a telephone connection using the mobile phone while a connection is being established to BMW Assist or while a call to BMW Assist is already in progress. If this happens, you must unpair the mobile phone and the vehicle if you wish to place a call with the mobile phone.

Start-up

Pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle

The following prerequisites must be met:

- ▷ Compatible mobile phone: the mobile phone is supported by the full preparation package mobile phone. You can obtain information on the Internet at: www.bmw.com
- ▷ The mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ The Bluetooth link is activated in the vehicle, refer to page 187, and in the mobile phone.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, some default settings may be necessary for the mobile phone: e.g. using the following menu items:
  - ▷ Bluetooth switched on
  - ▷ Connection without confirmation
  - ▷ Reconnection
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone type, the power-saving mode setting, for example, may result in a paired mobile phone not being detected by the vehicle.
- ▷ For pairing purposes, define any number as the Bluetooth passkey, e.g. 1. This Bluetooth passkey is no longer required after pairing has been successful.
- ▷ The ignition is switched on.

CarManuals2.com

⚠ Pair the mobile phone with the vehicle only when the car is stationary, to avoid endangering the car's occupants and other road users by being distracted.◀

Switch on ignition

1. Insert remote control all the way into the ignition lock.
2. Switch on ignition without operating the brake or clutch or pressing the start/stop button.

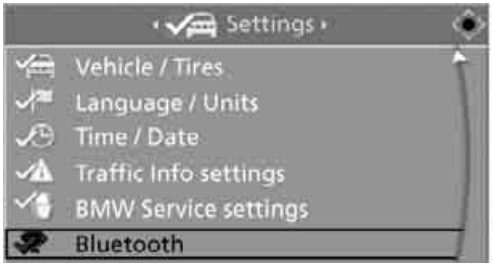
Preparation via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

3. Press the **MENU** button to call up the start menu.

4. Press the controller to open the i menu.
5. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

6. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.



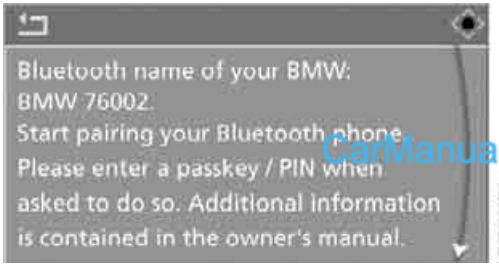
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

7. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.

8. Select "Pair new phone" and press the controller.

9. Select "Start pairing" and press the controller.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.



Preparation via the mobile phone

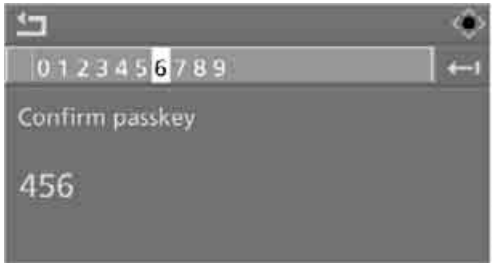
10. Further steps must be carried out with the mobile phone and vary depending on the model. Please refer to your mobile phone's operating instructions, e.g. under the topics of Searching for a Bluetooth device, Linking or Pairing.
The Bluetooth name of the vehicle also appears on the mobile phone display.

11. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

Pairing

Depending on your mobile phone, you will see messages, first on the mobile phone display or on the iDrive, requesting you to enter the same Bluetooth passkey previously determined by you.

12. Enter the Bluetooth passkey.
Depending on the mobile phone, you will have approx. 30 seconds to enter your Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and the Control Display.



13. Move the highlight marker to the third field from the top, select "Confirm passkey" and press the controller.

14. Wait several seconds until the "Communication" menu is displayed.

The next time you use the mobile phone inside the vehicle, it will be recognized within no more than 2 minutes as long as the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

With some mobile phones it may be necessary to make certain settings for a permanent Bluetooth link, e.g. using the authorization or secure connection menu item, refer to your mobile phone's operating instructions.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

As soon as a mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the phone book entries stored on the SIM card or on your mobile phone are transmitted to the vehicle. This data transfer depends on your mobile phone and can take several minutes; please refer to your mobile phone's operating instructions, if necessary.

CarManuals2.com

If not all phone book entries are displayed:

- ▷ Transfer all phone book entries from the SIM card to the mobile phone, if necessary.
- ▷ Phone book entries with special characters may not be displayed.

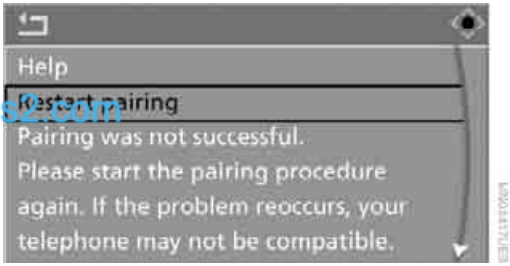
Up to four mobile phones can be paired, one after the other. If a fifth mobile phone is paired, the pairing data for the mobile phone whose pairing data was first stored on the vehicle is deleted.

Checks to perform if pairing is unsuccessful

- ▷ Is the mobile phone supported by the mobile phone preparation package? You can obtain information on the Internet at: www.bmw.com.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and vehicle match? The same Bluetooth passkey must be entered on the mobile phone's display and via iDrive.
- ▷ Did it take you more than 30 seconds to enter the Bluetooth passkey?
- ▷ Only a limited number of devices can be connected with the mobile phone. If necessary, delete connections with other devices.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone no longer responding? Switch the mobile phone off and on or briefly disconnect the power supply.

To repeat pairing:

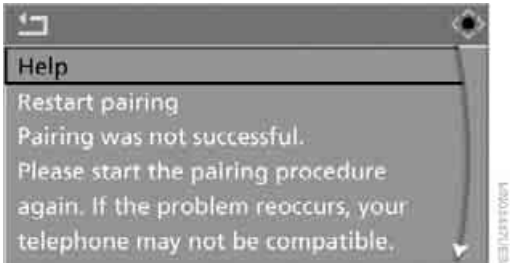
1. Select "Restart pairing" and press the controller.



2. Repeat steps 9 to 14.

If pairing fails again, contact BMW Customer Relations.

To call BMW Customer Relations:
Select "Help" and press the controller.



The phone number for BMW Customer Relations and information necessary for pairing appear on the display. In mobile phones that are already connected, you can select the BMW Customer Relations phone number to place the call.

List of paired mobile phones

Mobile phones with pairing data stored by the vehicle can be displayed. If several mobile phones are detected by the vehicle at the same

time, the mobile phone at the top of the list can be operated via the vehicle.

You can change the order of the mobile phones on the list. As long as a mobile phone from this list is selected, you cannot operate the mobile phones via the vehicle.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
5. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.
6. Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

7. Select "Move device up" and press the controller.

The selected mobile phone moves up one position on the list.

Unpairing the mobile phone from the vehicle

Should you no longer wish to operate a mobile phone via the vehicle, you can delete the mobile phone's pairing data.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Switch off the mobile phone.
2. Press the **MENU** button to call up the start menu.
3. Press the controller to open the i menu.
4. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller. "Bluetooth" is selected.
6. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.
7. Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

8. Select "Delete device" and press the controller.

The unpaired mobile phone is deleted from the list.

The phone book entries and the lists of stored phone numbers are deleted as well.

CarManuals2.com

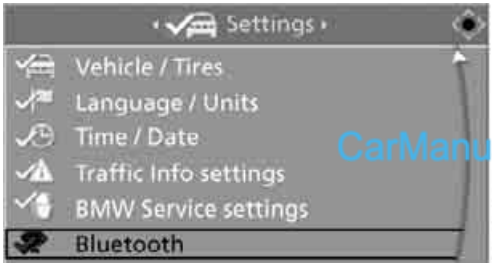
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Activating/deactivating the Bluetooth link

The use of Bluetooth technology is not permitted in all countries. Observe all applicable local regulations. Temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and the mobile phone, if necessary.
If the Bluetooth link is deactivated, you can no longer operate the mobile phone via the vehicle, and other devices with a Bluetooth interface can be used in combination with the mobile phone, e.g. a laptop.◀

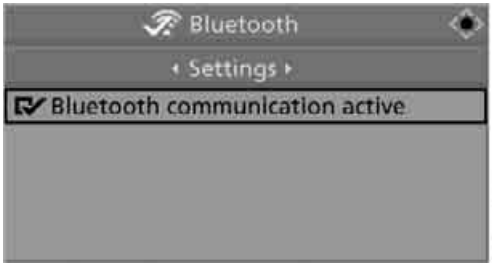
To temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and your mobile phone:

1. Press the **MENU** button to call up the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.



5. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top, select "Settings" and press the controller.

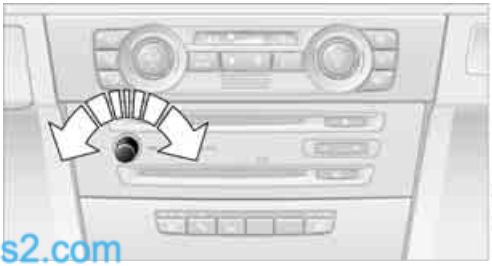
6. Select "Bluetooth communication active" and press the controller to activate or deactivate the link.



☑ The Bluetooth link is activated.

☐ The Bluetooth link is deactivated.

Adjusting volume



CarManuals2.com

Turn the knob during a call to select the desired volume.

This volume for the hands-free system is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 10.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Operation via iDrive

You can operate the following functions using iDrive:

- ▷ Accepting/rejecting calls
- ▷ dialing phone numbers
- ▷ Selecting phone numbers from the phone book

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

- Selecting stored phone numbers, e.g. from the list of accepted calls
- Ending a call

When the ignition and radio readiness are switched off, e.g. after taking the remote control out of the ignition switch, you can continue an ongoing call via the hands-free system for no more than 25 minutes.

CarManuals2.com

Voice quality

If the person you are talking to is having difficulties understanding you, this may be due to excessive background noise. The full mobile phone preparation package can compensate for these noises to a certain extent. To optimize voice quality during a call, we recommend that you:

- Reduce background noise, e.g. by closing the windows, reducing air flow from the automatic climate control or by pointing the open front air vents downward
- Reduce the volume of the hands-free system

Requirements

- The mobile phone's pairing data are stored by the vehicle and the mobile phone is operational.
- The engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- The mobile phone is recognized by the vehicle.

Calling up communication

Many of the functions described below are controlled using the "Communication" menu.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to call up the start menu.

2. Move the controller forwards to call up "Communication".

Receiving calls

If you have the phone number of the caller stored in the phone book and the phone number has been transmitted, the name of the entry is displayed.

Accepting a call

press the button on the steering wheel.

Alternatively:

"Accept" is selected.
Press the controller.

Rejecting a call

Select "Reject" and press the controller.
The caller is diverted to your mailbox if it has been activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

2. Select "Dial" and press the controller.
3. Enter the desired phone number by selecting the digits individually and pressing the controller.
   Always enter the complete phone number consisting of national dialing code, area code, and phone number.
   The letters correspond to the numbers on the keypad of the mobile phone.

   To delete the last digit:
   Move the controller towards the right to select the arrow ⟵ and press the controller.
4. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.
   Alternatively: press the button on the steering wheel.

For your phone number to be displayed to the person you are talking to, the display of phone numbers must be enabled by your provider.

Via programmable memory keys

You can store phone numbers on the programmable memory keys to call these numbers directly, refer to page 21.

Ending a call

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Alternatively:

1. Select the phone number and press the controller.

2. "End call" is selected.
   Press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Selecting a phone number from the phone book or from a list of stored phone numbers

Phone numbers you have dialed, received calls and phone book entries are stored in lists when the mobile phone is linked to the vehicle via Bluetooth. If the caller is listed in the phone book, the name of the entry is displayed instead of the phone number.

You can select the desired subscriber from the list and establish the connection.

Five lists are available:

▷ "A - Z"
  The entries in your mobile phone's phone

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

book, consisting of names and phone numbers, are sorted alphabetically.

▷ "Top 8"
The eight numbers dialed most frequently from the "A - Z" phone book are automatically stored in the Top 8 list.

▷ "Redial"
The last eight phone numbers you have dialed are automatically stored. The last number dialed is at the top of the list.

▷ "Missed calls"
The phone numbers of the last eight rejected calls are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been transmitted.

▷ "Received calls"
The phone numbers of the last eight accepted calls are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been transmitted.

Selecting phone numbers from phone book

The "A - Z" list is available for your phone book entries. The phone book entries appear on the Control Display.

CarManuals2.com

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. To limit the number of displayed entries, select the initial letter of the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

5. Select "Call" and press the controller.
The system dials the number.

If different phone numbers are stored in the mobile phone under one name, e.g. office and home, the name is shown once for each phone number.

You can change a phone number stored in the phone book, e.g. to call a specific extension:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select "Add digits" and press the controller.
5. Change the phone number.
6. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.

Dialing a stored phone number from a list

To select an entry and establish a connection:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select a list and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Top 8"
   - ▷ "Redial"
   - ▷ "Missed calls"
   - ▷ "Received calls"

CarManuals2.com

3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

4. Select "Call" and press the controller.
   The system dials the number.

Deleting an individual entry

1. Select the desired entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete" and press the controller.
   The entry is deleted.

Deleting the entire list

1. Select an entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete all numbers" and press the controller.

3. If applicable, select "Yes" and press the controller.
   The list is deleted.

BMW Contact*

If BMW Assist has not been enabled for you, you can have several service numbers displayed:

- ▷ BMW Roadside Assistance* if you need help in the event of a breakdown
- ▷ BMW Service if you wish to schedule a service appointment, for example
- ▷ BMW Customer Relations* for information related to your vehicle

If BMW Assist is enabled, refer to page 197.

You can dial the displayed service numbers if your mobile phone has been paired with the vehicle:

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forwards to select "Communication".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Select "BMW Contact" and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Contact Numbers" and press the controller.

5. Select one of the following menu items and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Roadside Assistance"
   - ▷ "Customer Relations"
   - ▷ "Service Request"
6. Select "Call" and press the controller.

Contact will be established.

Dialing phone numbers via touch tones

Touch-tone dialing is required for access to network services or for controlling devices, e.g. for remote querying on an answering machine.

This function is available whenever there is a connection.

1. Establish connection.

2. Move the controller backwards until the bottom field is selected.
3. Select the desired touch-tone character and press the controller.
   Each selection is transmitted immediately and is confirmed by a tone, depending on the type of mobile phone you are using.

CarManuals2.com

Switching between mobile phone and hands-free system

From mobile phone to hands-free system*

You can continue ongoing calls outside of the vehicle's Bluetooth range via the hands-free system as long as the engine is running or the ignition is switched on. Depending on your mobile phone, the system automatically switches to hands-free mode.

With mobile phones that do not automatically switch to hands-free mode:

- ▷ Depending on the type of mobile phone you are using, it may be possible to continue the conversation via the hands-free system. Refer to the display on your mobile phone

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

and/or your mobile phone's operating instructions.

▷ Press the button above the storage compartment. The changeover can take several seconds.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

If you are making a call via the hands-free system, it may be possible to continue the call via the mobile phone, depending on your mobile phone model. Refer to the display on your mobile phone and/or your mobile phone's operating instructions.

Alternatively, you can deactivate the Bluetooth link.

Depending on the type of mobile phone you are using, it may occur that calls are switched from the hands-free system to the mobile phone if reception of the wireless network is poor.

Operation by voice commands*

The concept

You can operate your mobile phone without having to take a hand off the steering wheel. During your entries, you will be guided in many cases by announcements or questions.

The same prerequisites apply as for operation via iDrive, refer to page 187.

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the system.

Saying commands

Activating the system

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.

   A sound signal indicates that you can say commands.

2. Say the command.

CarManuals2.com

Ending/canceling operation by voice commands

Press the button on the steering wheel or

›Cancel‹.

In dialogs where text is spoken, e.g. a name rather than a command, canceling is only possible using the button on the steering wheel.

Having the possible commands read aloud

The system recognizes specific commands that must be pronounced exactly word for word. You can have the possible commands for any function read aloud to you:

›Help‹

Using alternative commands

Often there is more than a single command to run a function, e.g.:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

Digits from zero to nine are recognized.

You can say each digit individually or group them into a sequence to accelerate the input.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Example: dialing phone numbers

Start the dialog:

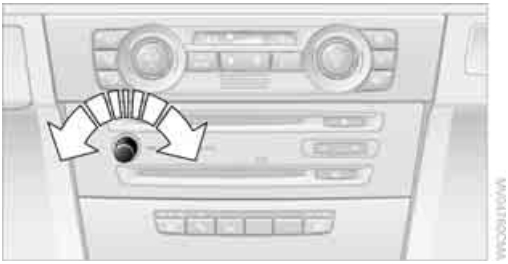
Press the button on the steering wheel.

Command	Voice control response
›Dial number‹	››Please say the number‹‹
e.g. ›123 456 7890‹	Depending on your equipment version: ››123 456 7890. Continue?‹‹ or ››123 456 7890. And next?‹‹
›Dial‹	››Dialing number‹‹

CarManuals2.com

Adjusting the volume of the instructions

You can adjust the volume for the instructions from the system:



Turn the button during an instruction.

This volume for the instructions is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
2. Say the phone number.
   For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dial‹.

The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone numbers

After the last spoken sequence of digits has been repeated by the system, you can delete this sequence of digits.

›Correct number‹.
The digits are deleted.

The command ›Correct number‹ can be repeated as often as you like.

Deleting phone numbers

›Delete‹.

All digits entered up to this point are deleted.

Voice phone book

The phone book entries can be called up automatically from your mobile phone's memory.

Selecting an entry

The connection to the phone number of the selected entry is established.

1. ›Dial name‹.
   The dialog for selecting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Redialing

The ›Redial‹ command calls up "Redial".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Notes

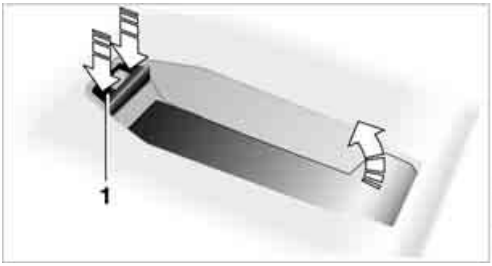
Important for voice commands

For voice commands, bear in mind the following:

- ▷ Pronounce the commands smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphases and pauses.
- ▷ Keep the doors, windows and glass roof closed to prevent interference from outside noise.
- ▷ Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle while speaking.

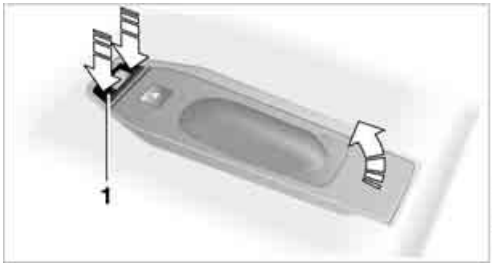
Inserting/removing snap-in adapter

1. Press area **1** around the button and take off the cover*.



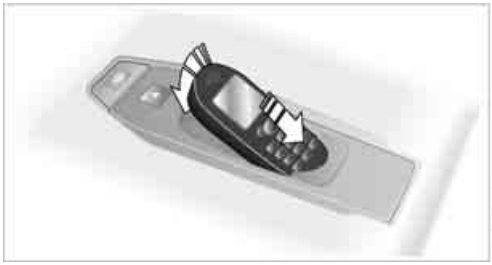
2. Insert the snap-in adapter in the front and press it downward until it engages.

To remove the snap-in adapter:
Press area **1** around the button.



Inserting mobile phone

1. If applicable, remove the protective cap from the mobile phone's antenna connector so that the mobile phone can engage in the snap-in adapter.
2. With its buttons facing upward, slide the mobile phone up towards the electrical contact points and press it downward until it engages.

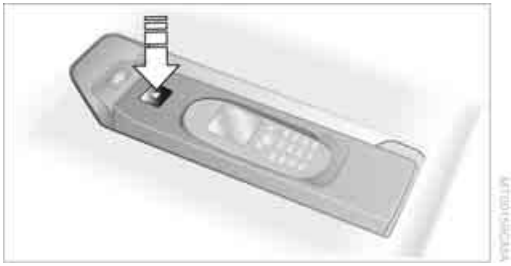


The mobile phone's battery is charged as soon as the vehicle is in radio readiness or the steering is unlocked.

▷ To conserve battery power, you should avoid using the mobile phone when the ignition is switched off.◀

CarManuals2.com

Removing mobile phone



Press the button.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist provides you with various services. For example, the position data of your vehicle can be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center if an Emergency Request* has been sent.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without you having to visit a BMW center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist service will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after a new contract has been signed.

Requirements

You can use BMW Assist when the following requirements are met:

- The installed BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- To activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.
- You have subscribed to BMW Assist with your BMW center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. Enabling must have been completed.
- BMW Assist is activated, refer to page 202.

CarManuals2.com

Offered services

The following services are available via BMW Assist:

- Emergency Request, refer to page 235:
  When you press the SOS button, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center. The BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.
- Automatic Collision Notification:
  Under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance:
  You can call BMW Roadside Assistance* should you require help in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle data and position data are transmitted during this call.
- Customer Relations:
  For all information related to your vehicle you can be connected with BMW Customer Relations.
- TeleService:
  Data on your vehicle's service status or required inspections are transmitted to your BMW center either automatically before a service due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- Remote Door Unlock:
  Contact the BMW Assist Response Center if your remote control or key is not available and you would like to have the vehicle unlocked.
- Stolen Vehicle Recovery:
  After you report your vehicle stolen with the police, call the BMW Assist Response Center to determine its position.

In addition, optional services can be provided to you, such as the Concierge service or information on directions, traffic or the weather. You can use Critical Calling to activate a limited number of calls via the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. when you do not have your mobile phone with you.
Press the SOS button in order to contact the BMW Assist Response Center, see below.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

You can also access BMW Assist Concierge services via the Internet.

Characteristics of the offered services

The following characteristics apply to the services:

- ▷ The services offered are country-specific.
- ▷ Voice contact is established or data are transferred, depending on the equipment and the country. In some countries, it is possible to do both.
- ▷ The data transmitted can be vehicle data, for example, your current position or the Condition Based Service CBS data.

Using services

Contacting the BMW Assist Response Center

You can contact the BMW Assist Response Center via the SOS button.

1. Briefly press the cover flap to open.
   The arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps varies slightly among vehicle equipment versions.

CarManuals2.com

2. Press the button for at least 2 seconds.

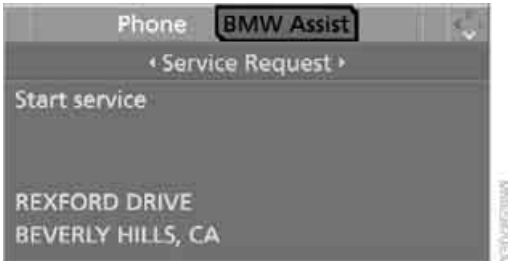
The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you with BMW Roadside Assistance.

Roadside Assistance

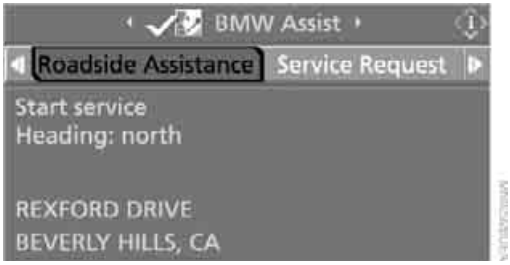
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Move the controller forwards to select "Communication".
3. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Roadside Assistance" and press the controller.



   If the current location can be determined, the current vehicle position is displayed.

5. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you with BMW Roadside Assistance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

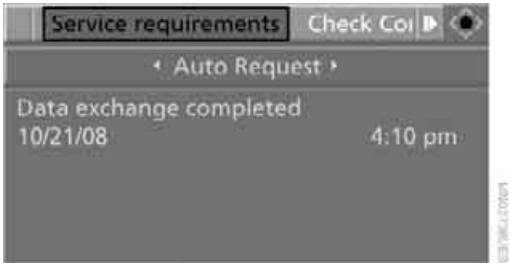
TeleService

Automatic service notification*

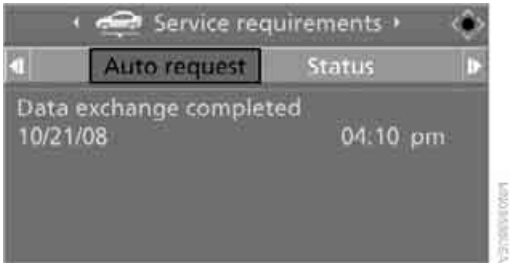
The data on the service status of your vehicle or on required inspections are transmitted automatically prior to the due date. You can check when the BMW center was notified.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.

4. Select "Service Info" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Auto Request" and press the controller.

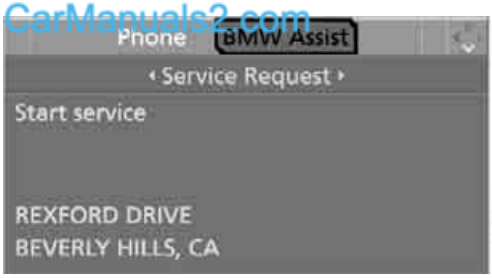


Manual service notification

You can transmit data regarding your vehicle's service status to your BMW center when you wish to arrange a service appointment.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forwards to select "Communication".
3. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



4. Select "Service Request"

5. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

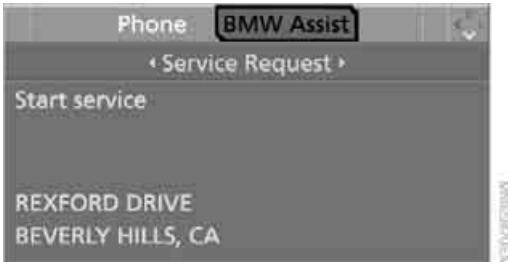
6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

The service-relevant data are transmitted. Your BMW center will contact you to arrange a service appointment.

Contacting BMW Customer Relations

For all information related to your vehicle you can call BMW Customer Relations.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forwards to select "Communication".
3. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Customer Relations".

5. Press the controller.
6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you with BMW Customer Relations.

CarManuals2.com

Concierge service*

When you call the BMW Assist Concierge, you can obtain information about, e.g., current events, gas stations or hotels, as well as receive the corresponding telephone numbers and addresses. Many hotels can be booked directly through the BMW Assist Concierge service.

Concierge service requires additional enabling by the BMW Assist Response Center.

Calling the Concierge

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forwards to select "Communication".
3. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "Concierge" and press the controller.

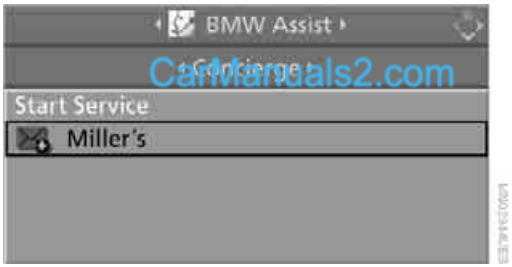
5. Select "Start Service" and press the controller.

The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you with a BMW Assist Concierge.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Displaying transmitted data

Select a received message, if applicable, and press the controller.



Dialing a phone number or transferring an address for destination guidance

1. Select "Options" and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item:

▷ Press "Call" to make a telephone call. A prerequisite for this is that your Bluetooth mobile phone has been paired with the vehicle.

▷ Press "Select as destination" to transfer the address to the navigation system for destination guidance.

Adapting BMW Assist

Displaying and updating services

If the services offered by BMW Assist change, you will be notified. In that event you may update the service functions.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Service settings" is selected and press the controller.

5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Enabled services" is selected and press the controller.
   The currently available BMW Assist services are displayed.
6. If necessary, select "Options" and press the controller.

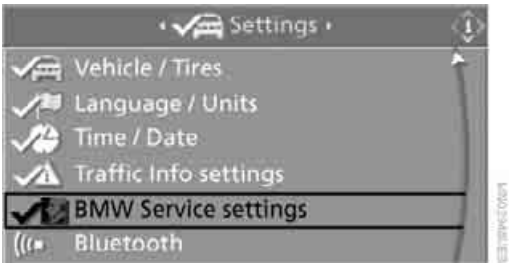
7. Select "Update services" and press the controller.

Terminating services*

When you terminate the services, the connection to BMW Assist is deactivated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "BMW Service settings" is selected and press the controller.



5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Enabled services" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Options" and press the controller.

7. Select "Terminate services" and press the controller.

BMW Assist is blocked from use, and your vehicle's current position will not be transmitted in case of an Emergency Request*. To unblock the services, reactivate BMW Assist, see below. The contractual agreement is not affected by this.

Reactivate BMW Assist, if necessary, to log on again.

Activating BMW Assist

BMW Assist must be activated to use the services.

Requirements

▷ Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current location. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.

▷ Leave vehicle ignition switched on during the activation process.

Activating

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Service settings" is selected and press the controller.

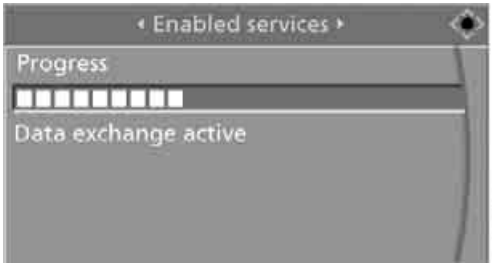
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

until "Enabled services" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Enable services" and press the controller.
   BMW Assist is activated and data exchange with the BMW Assist Response Center begins.



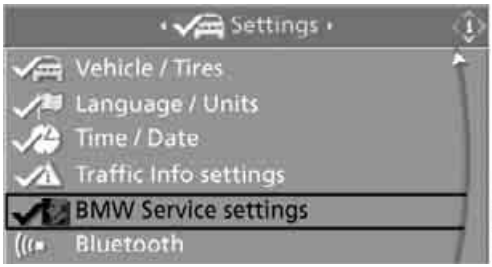
Activation takes a few minutes. Progress status is displayed on the Control Display. If you open another menu, the activation process continues in the background.

Displaying vehicle data

When BMW Assist is activated, the license plate and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle may be displayed.

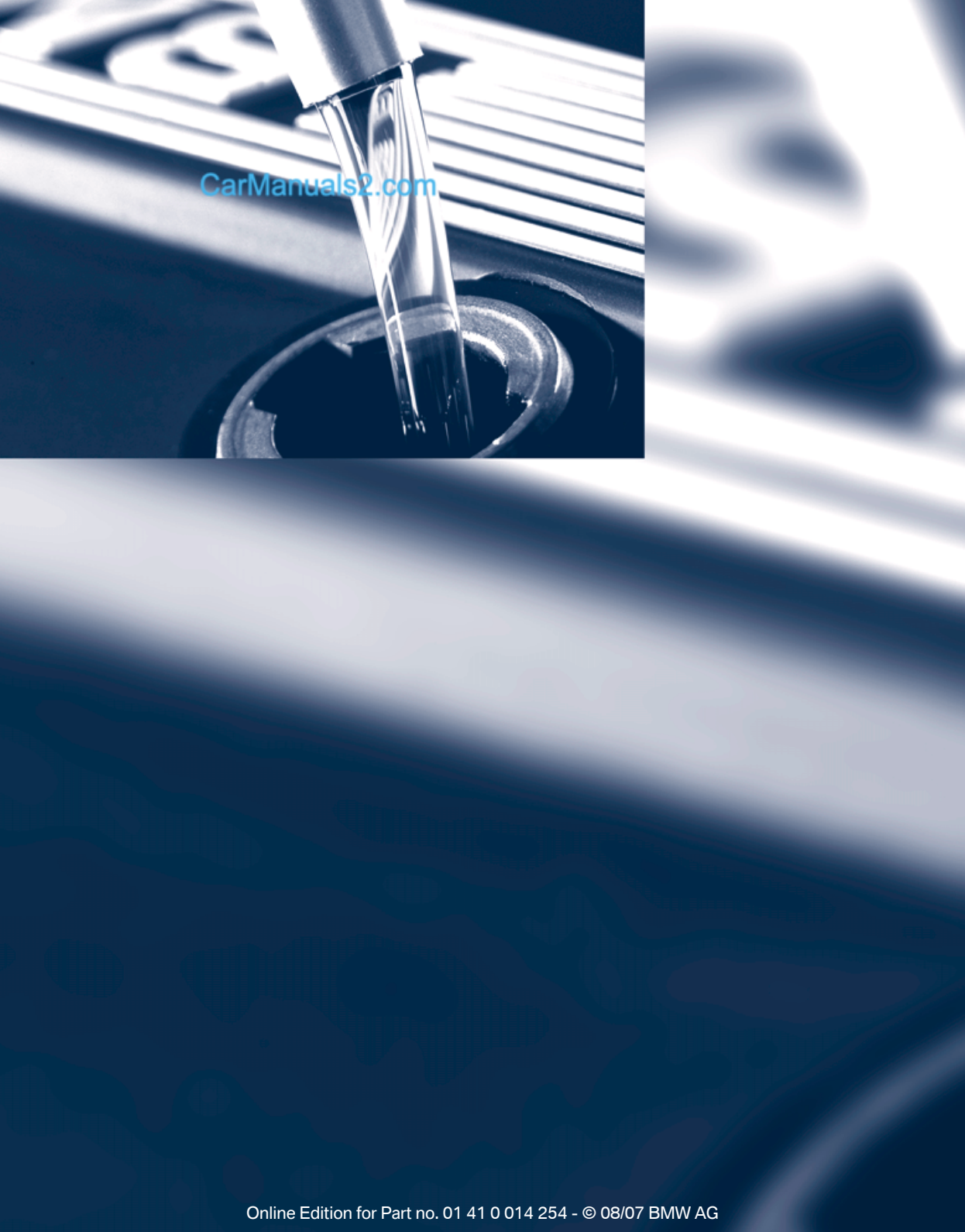
1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Service settings" and press the controller.



5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Profile" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Mobility

This section helps you maintain your car's mobility by supplying important information on vital topics including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and breakdown assistance.

Refueling

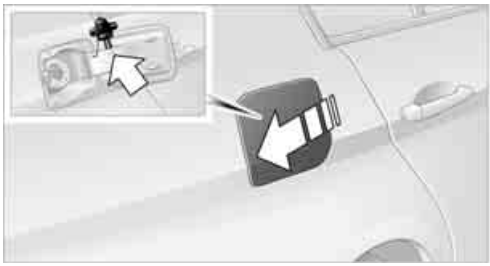
Always switch off the engine before refueling, otherwise, fuel cannot be added to the tank and a message will be displayed.◀

CarManuals2.com

Take all precautionary measures and observe all applicable regulations when handling fuel. Do not carry any spare fuel containers in your vehicle. They can develop a leak and cause an explosion or cause a fire in the event of an accident.◀

Fuel filler door

Opening



1. Open fuel filler door. To do so, lightly press the rear edge.
2. Turn the gas cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the gas cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler door.

Closing

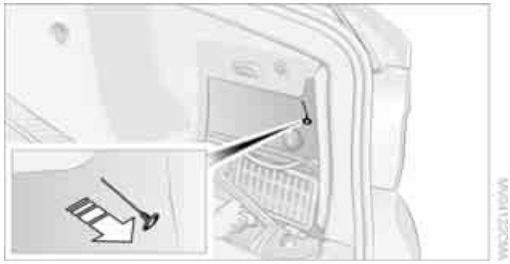
Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

Do not pinch the band attached to the cap, otherwise the cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape. A message will be displayed if the gas cap is loose or missing.◀

Manually releasing the fuel filler door

In the event of a malfunction, you can release the fuel filler door manually:

Sedan

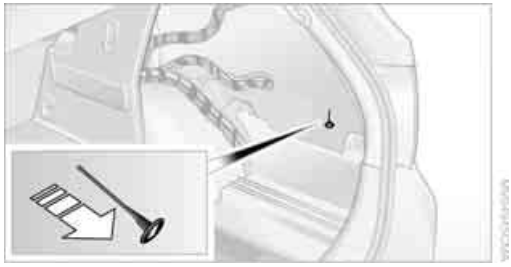


1. Remove the cover from the right-hand sidewall of the cargo bay.
2. Pull the knob with the fuel pump symbol. The fuel filler door is released.

Sports Wagon

1. Fold up the cargo bay floor panel.
2. Remove the cover from the right-hand sidewall of the cargo bay. To do so, turn the screws, arrows **1**, 90° and take out the cover, arrow **2**.

3. Pull the knob with the fuel pump symbol. The fuel filler door is released.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Observe the following when refueling

When handling fuels, follow the safety instructions provided at filling stations, otherwise there is a risk of personal injury or property damage.◀

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid lifting the filler nozzle while filling the tank, as that would lead to

- premature pump shutoff
- reduced efficiency of the fuel-vapor recovery system.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 16.1 US gallons/61 liters, including the reserve capacity of 2.1 US gallons/8 liters.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Fuel specifications

Do not fill the tank with leaded fuel, as this would cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter.
Do not fill the tank with E85, i.e. fuel containing 85% ethanol, nor with FlexFuel. Otherwise the engine and fuel supply system will be damaged.◀

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 91

This gasoline is highly recommended.

However, you may also use gasoline with less AKI. The minimum AKI Rating is:

- 323i, 328i/xi: 87
- 335i/xi: 89.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

Do not use any gasoline below the specified minimum fuel grade. Otherwise the engine could be damaged.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10% ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8% oxygen by weight, that is, 15% MTBE or 3% methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in driveability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.
Should you encounter driveability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.
Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

CarManuals2.com

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressures

Information for your safety

It is not merely the tires' service life, but also driving comfort and, to a great extent, driving safety that depend on the condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it, if necessary: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. If you fail to observe this precaution you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that can not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident. Do not drive with deflated, i.e. flat tires, except when using Run-Flat Tires. A flat tire will seriously impair your vehicle's handling and braking response. Attempts to drive on a flat tire can lead to loss of control over the vehicle.◀

Checking pressure

Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure is higher.

After correcting tire inflation pressures, always reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 89.◀

Inflation pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes approved and tire brands recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW center.◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressures, observe the following:

- Tire sizes for your vehicle
- Load conditions
- Maximum allowable driving speed

CarManuals2.com

Tire inflation pressures for driving up to 100 mph or 160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph or 160 km/h and to achieve optimum driving comfort, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the columns for traveling speeds up to a maximum of 100 mph or 160 km/h.

These tire inflation pressures can also be found on the driver's-side door post when the driver's door is open.

The maximum permissible speed for these tire pressures is 100 mph or 160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed, otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Tire inflation pressures for driving above 100 mph or 160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph or 160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the columns for traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph or 160 km/h. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits, otherwise violations of the laws could occur.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Sedan: tire inflation pressures for the 323i, for Canada only

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
without Sports package						
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 V 225/50 R 16 92 H M+S 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	35/240	32/220	33/230	32/220	39/270
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	32/220	36/250	32/220	33/230	32/220	39/270
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	32/220	-	32/220	-	35/240
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	36/250	-	33/230	-	39/270
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	35/240	-	32/220	-	35/240	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	41/280	-	33/230	-	41/280
with Sports package						
225/50 R 16 92 V 225/50 R 16 92 H M+S 205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S	32/220	35/240	32/220	36/250	35/240	42/290
225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	35/240	32/220	38/260	38/260	45/310
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	32/220	36/250	32/220	38/260	38/260	45/310
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	-	32/220	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	32/220	-	35/240	-	42/290
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	32/220	-	33/230	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	36/250	-	36/250	-	44/300
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	35/240	-	33/230	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	41/280	-	36/250	-	44/300

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 245.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Sedan: tire inflation pressures for the 328i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
without Sports package						
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 V 225/50 R 16 92 H M+S 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	36/250	32/220	35/240	32/220	39/270
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	32/220	36/250	32/220	35/240	33/230	41/280
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	32/220	-	32/220	-	36/250
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	36/250	-	35/240	-	39/270
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 Y	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 Y	-	36/250	-	32/220	-	36/250
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	35/240	-	32/220	-	35/240	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	41/280	-	35/240	-	41/280

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
with Sports package						
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 V 225/50 R 16 92 H M+S 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S	32/220	36/250	32/220	36/250	36/250	44/300
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	36/250	32/220	39/270	39/270	46/320
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	-	32/220	-	39/270	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	32/220	-	35/240	-	41/280
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	32/220	-	33/230	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	36/250	-	38/260	-	44/300
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 Y	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 Y	-	36/250	-	35/240	-	41/280
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	35/240	-	33/230	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	41/280	-	38/260	-	44/300
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 245.						

CarManuals2.com

Sedan: tire inflation pressures for the 328xi

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
without Sports package:						
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 V 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL 225/45 R 17 91 W	32/220	36/250	32/220	35/240	35/240	41/280
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	-	32/220	-	35/240	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	32/220	-	32/220	-	36/250
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	33/230	-	33/230	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	36/250	-	35/240	-	41/280
with Sports package:						
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 H M+S 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S	32/220	36/250	32/220	35/240	35/240	41/280
225/50 R 16 92 V 225/45 R 17 91 W	32/220	36/250	33/230	36/250	38/260	44/300
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	32/220	36/250	35/240	38/260	39/270	45/310
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	33/230	-	33/230	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	32/220	-	33/230	-	39/270
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	33/230	-	38/260	-	41/280	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	36/250	-	38/260	-	345/310
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 245.						

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Sedan: tire inflation pressures for the 335i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
without Sports package:						
225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 94 W 225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	32/220	38/260	32/220	36/250	35/240	42/290
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	-	32/220	-	35/240	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	33/230	-	32/220	-	36/250
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	32/220	-	32/220	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	38/260	-	36/250	-	41/280
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 Y	32/220	-	32/220	-	33/230	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 Y	-	38/260	-	32/220	-	38/260
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	38/260	-	35/240	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	42/290	-	36/250	-	42/290
with Sports package:						
225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 94 W	32/220	38/260	32/220	38/260	36/250	44/300
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	32/220	38/260	35/240	41/280	39/270	46/320
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	-	33/230	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	33/230	-	35/240	-	41/280
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	32/220	-	35/240	-	39/270	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	38/260	-	39/270	-	45/310
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 Y	32/220	-	32/220	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 Y	-	38/260	-	35/240	-	41/280
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	38/260	-	36/250	-	39/270	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	42/290	-	39/270	-	45/310
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 245.						

CarManuals2.com

Sedan: tire inflation pressures for the 335xi

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
without Sports package:						
225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL 225/45 R 17 91 W	33/230	36/250	33/230	35/240	36/250	42/290
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 W	33/230	-	33/230	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 W	-	33/230	-	33/230	-	36/250
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	36/250	-	36/250	-	39/270	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	36/250	-	36/250	-	42/290
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 Y	36/250	-	33/230	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 Y	-	36/250	-	33/230	-	39/270
with Sports package:						
225/45 R 17 91 H M+S	33/230	36/250	33/230	35/240	36/250	42/290
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	33/230	36/250	36/250	39/270	39/270	45/310
225/45 R 17 91 W	33/230	36/250	38/260	39/270	41/280	46/320
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 W	33/230	-	36/250	-	39/270	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 W	-	33/230	-	36/250	-	41/280
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	36/250	-	39/270	-	44/300	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	36/250	-	39/270	-	45/310
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 Y	36/250	-	36/250	-	39/270	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 Y	-	36/250	-	36/250	-	41/280
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 245.						

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Sports Wagon: tire inflation pressures for the 328i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
without Sports package:						
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 W 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 91 W	32/220	39/270	32/220	36/250	36/250	44/300
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	33/230	41/280	32/220	38/260	38/260	45/310
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	-	32/220	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	35/240	-	33/230	-	39/270
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	38/260	-	32/220	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	45/310	-	38/260	-	45/310
with Sports package:						
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 H M+S 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S	32/220	39/270	32/220	36/250	36/250	44/300
225/50 R 16 92 W 225/45 R 17 91 W	32/220	39/270	32/220	39/270	39/270	46/320
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	33/230	41/280	35/240	42/290	44/300	51/350
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	-	32/220	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	35/240	-	38/260	-	45/310
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	38/260	-	33/230	-	41/280	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	45/310	-	41/280	-	48/330

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 245.

CarManuals2.com

Sports Wagon: tire inflation pressures for the 328xi

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
without Sports package:						
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 W 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL 225/45 R 17 91 W	32/220	39/270	32/220	38/260	36/250	44/300
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	-	32/220	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	35/240	-	32/220	-	39/270
with Sports package:						
205/55 R 16 91 H M+S 225/50 R 16 92 H M+S 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S	32/220	39/270	32/220	38/260	36/250	44/300
225/50 R 16 92 W 225/45 R 17 91 W	32/220	39/270	33/230	39/270	39/270	46/320
225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	32/220	39/270	35/240	42/290	42/290	49/340
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	32/220	-	33/230	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	35/240	-	36/250	-	44/300
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 245.						

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

CarManuals2.com

e.g. 225/45 R 17 91 V

Nominal width in mm
Aspect ratio in %
Radial belt construction
Rim diameter in inches
Load rating, not on ZR tires
Speed code letter, in front of the R on ZR tires

Speed code letter

Q = up to 100 mph or 160 km/h

T = up to 118 mph or 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph or 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph or 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph or 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph or 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the US Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

e.g. DOT xxxx xxx 0705

Manufacturer's code for tire make
Tire size and tire design
Tire age

Tire age

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding: DOT ... 3006 means that the tire was manufactured in week 30 of 2006.

BMW recommends that you replace all tires after 6 years at most, even if some tires may last for 10 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.◀

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

CarManuals2.com

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

RSC – Run-Flat Tires

You will recognize Run-Flat Tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to page 219.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than summer tires.

XL

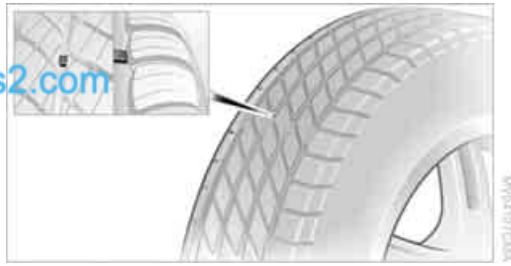
Designation for specially reinforced tires.

Tire condition

Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear, signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged in the tread. Check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 1/8 in/ 3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 1/16 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 1/8 in/ 3 mm there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.
When winter tires wear down past a tread depth of 1/6 in/4 mm, they become perceptibly less suitable for winter conditions. In the interest of safety, new tires should be installed.



Wear indicators in the base of the tread groove are distributed around the tire's circumference; the letters TWI, for Tread Wear Indicator, on the tire's sidewalls identify tires that incorporate these wear indicators. Once the tire tread has worn down to the wear indicators, the tire has worn to a depth of 1/16 in/1.6 mm.

Wheel/tire damage

Please note that low-profile tires cause wheels, tires and suspension parts to be more susceptible to road hazard and consequential damages.
Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. The same applies to any other abnormal road behavior, such as pulling severely to the right or left.

In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there.
Otherwise, tire damage can be extremely dangerous for vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Tire age

For various reasons, such as the development of brittleness, BMW recommends tire replacement after no more than 6 years, regardless of the actual wear of the tires.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding:
DOT ... 0705 means that the tire was manufactured in week 07 of 2005.

Run-Flat Tires

The symbol identifying Run-Flat Tires is a circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall.
Run-Flat Tires comprise a conditionally self-supporting tire and a special rim. The reinforcement in the sidewalls ensures that the tire can continue to be used subject to certain restrictions, even if depressurized.

For information on continuing to drive with a flat tire, refer to Indication of a flat tire, page 90.

CarManuals2.com

New wheels and tires

Have new wheels and tires installed only by your BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

BMW recommends that you do not use retreaded tires, since driving safety may be impaired. The causes for this include potentially different tire casing structures and often wide variations in tire age, which can result in a limited service life.◀

Correct wheels and tires

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires and vice versa, mount Run-Flat Tires for your own safety. In the event of a flat, no spare wheel is available. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

For safety reasons, BMW recommends that damaged Run-Flat Tires be replaced rather than repaired. Otherwise, subsequent damage cannot be ruled out.◀

BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions, which could lead to body contact and thus to severe accidents. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot guarantee their driving safety.◀

You can inquire about the right wheel/tire combination at your BMW center.

The correct combination of wheels and tires is also necessary to ensure reliable operation of various vehicle systems such as ABS, DSC or RPA.

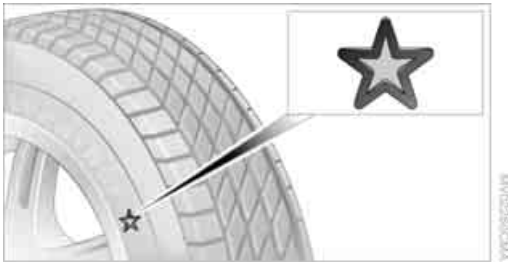
To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single brand and tread configuration. After a tire has been damaged, mount the previous wheel and tire combination again as soon as possible.

Wheels with Tire Pressure Monitor TPM electronics

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires, or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics; otherwise the Tire Pressure Monitor may not be able to detect a puncture, refer to page 90. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Recommended tire brands



Certain makes of tire are recommended by BMW for each tire size. They are marked with a clearly visible BMW designation on the sidewall of the tire.

When properly used, these tires meet the highest standards in terms of safety and handling characteristics.

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for use in cold winter driving conditions. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Pay attention to speed

Always comply with the speed limit for the winter tires mounted on your car; failure to do so could result in tire damage and accidents.◀

If the car is capable of speeds higher than that permitted for the winter tires, a label stating the maximum permitted speed for the mounted tires must be displayed in your field of view. Specialist tire dealers and your BMW center can supply these labels.

Storage

Always store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels. Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire.

Swapping wheels between axles

BMW advises against swapping wheels between the front and rear axles, even if all tires have the same size, as this could impair driving characteristics. If the tires are of mixed sizes, swapping wheels between the axles is not permissible.

Snow chains*

Only certain fine-link snow chains have been tested by BMW, classified as safe for use and recommended. Consult your BMW center for more information.
Snow chains must be mounted in pairs and on the rear wheels only. Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph or 50 km/h.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor if snow chains are mounted, otherwise the instrument might issue an incorrect reading. When driving with snow chains, you may find it helpful to activate DTC temporarily, refer to page 87.◀

CarManuals2.com

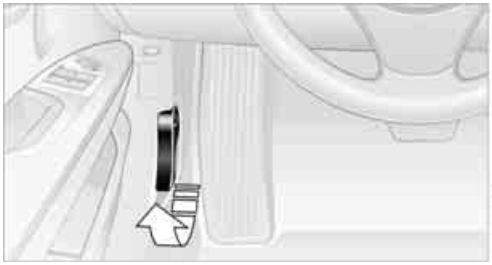
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Under the hood

Do not work on the car unless you possess the necessary technical knowledge. If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the vehicle performed only by a BMW center or by a workshop that work according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Hood

Releasing



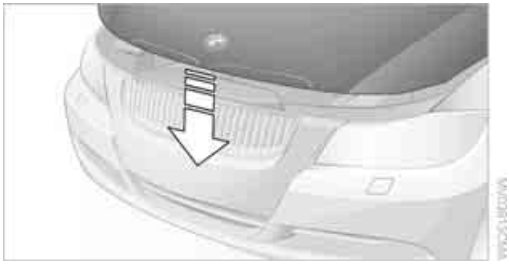
Pull the lever.

Opening

In order to avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are against the windshield before you open the hood.◀

Press the release handle and open the hood.

Closing



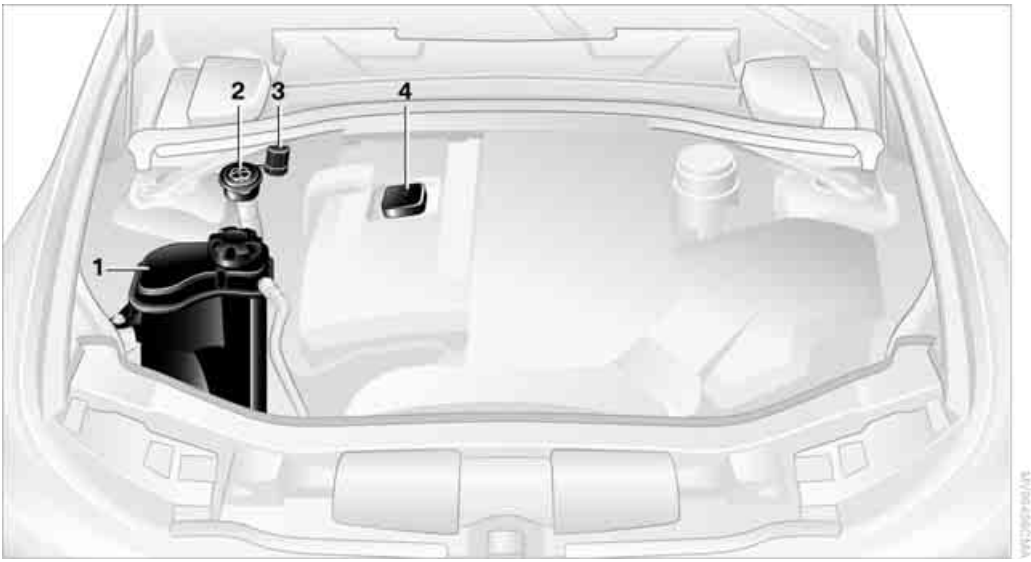
Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear, otherwise injuries may result.

If you see any signs while driving your vehicle that the hood is not completely closed, stop at once and close it securely.◀

CarManuals2.com

Important parts of the engine compartment



1 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 224

2 Washer fluid filler neck for headlamp cleaning system and window washer system, refer to page 62

3 Jump-starting connection, refer to page 236

4 Filler neck for engine oil, refer to Adding engine oil

CarManuals2.com

Engine oil

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and driving conditions.

Checking oil level

Your car is equipped with an electronic oil-level monitor.

For a precise measurement and display of the oil level, it is necessary that the engine be at operating temperature, i.e. after uninterrupted driving for at least approx. 6.5 miles/10 km. You can have the oil level displayed while you are driving, or while the vehicle is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running.

Display in the instrument cluster

1. Push button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol is shown in the display, accompanied by the word "OIL".
2. Press button **2** in the turn indicator lever. The oil level is checked and the reading displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Possible displays

1 Oil level OK

2 Oil level is being checked.
This can take about 3 minutes if the car is at a standstill on a level surface, or about 5 minutes while the car is on the move.

3 Oil level down to minimum:
Add engine oil as soon as possible, but no more than 1 US quart/1 liter, refer also to Adding engine oil on page 224.

4 Oil level is too high.

⚠ Too much oil will harm the engine. Have the vehicle checked without delay.◀

5 The oil level sensor is defective.
Do not add engine oil. You can continue your journey. Note the newly calculated distance remaining to the next oil service, refer to page 76. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

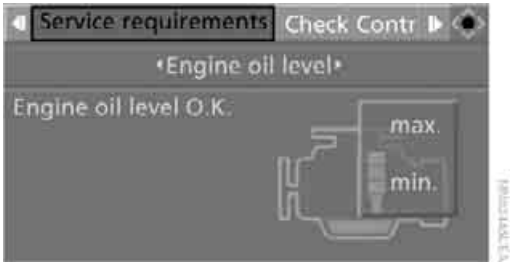
Display via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

CarManuals2.com

1. Press the MENU button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.

4. Select "Service Info" and press the controller.
5. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the uppermost field. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



6. If necessary, move the highlight marker to the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Engine oil level" is selected and press the controller. The oil level is displayed.

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level O.K."

▷ "No measurement available: Updating engine oil level measurement..."
The engine oil level is measured. This can take about 3 minutes if the car is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running, and about 5 minutes while the car is on the move.

▷ "Oil level at the minimum! Refill with 1 quart of engine oil."
Add engine oil as soon as possible, but no

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

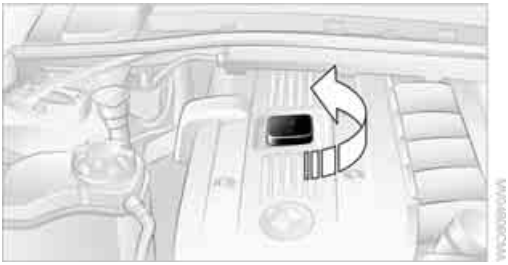
more than 1 US quart/1 liter, refer also to Adding engine oil below.

▷ "Engine oil level too high"

Too much oil will harm the engine. Have the vehicle checked without delay.◀

▷ "Please observe recalculated service interval for engine oil"
Do not add engine oil. You can continue your journey. Note the newly calculated distance remaining to the next oil service, refer to page 76. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil



Do not add 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil until a corresponding message is shown on the Control Display.

Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km, otherwise the engine could be damaged.◀

Keep oils, greases, etc. out of the reach of children and comply with the relevant warnings on the containers. Otherwise, health hazards may result.◀

Oil change

Have oil changed only at your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Specified engine oils

CarManuals2.com

The quality of the engine oil selected has critical significance for the operation and service life of an engine. BMW continuously approves specific oils after confirming their suitability for use in its vehicles with extensive testing.

Do not use oil additives as these may cause engine damage.◀

Only use approved BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil.

If BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil is not available, you can add small quantities of other synthetic oils in between oil changes. Only use oils with the API SM specification or higher.

Your BMW center will be glad to answer any questions regarding BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil or approved synthetic oils.◀

You can also call BMW of North America at 1-800-831-1117 or visit the website www.bmwusa.com to obtain this information.

Viscosity ratings

Viscosity is a measure of an oil's flow rating and is categorized in SAE classes.

Selecting the appropriate SAE class depends on the regional climatic conditions in which you normally drive your BMW.

Approved oils belong to the 5W-40 and 5W-30 classes.◀

These oils can be used for driving at all outside temperatures.

BMW recommends Castrol

Coolant

Do not add coolant to the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns.◀

Coolant consists of half water and half additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Ask your BMW center for suitable additives.

Only use suitable additives, otherwise engine damage may result. Because additives are harmful to your health, it is important to follow the instructions on the containers.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Comply with the appropriate environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant additives.◀

Checking coolant level

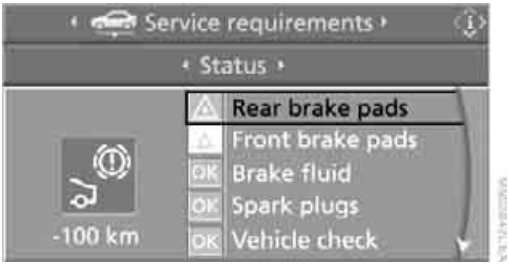
1. Do not open the engine hood before the engine has cooled down.
2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank a little counterclockwise to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
3. The coolant level is correct if it is between the maximum and minimum marks in the filler neck, refer also to the diagram next to the filler neck.

4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
6. Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

CarManuals2.com

Maintenance

BMW Maintenance System



The BMW Maintenance System supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your BMW. The objective is to optimize efforts with respect to minimal vehicle maintenance costs.

If and when you come to sell your BMW, a comprehensive record of servicing will prove a significant benefit.

CBS Condition Based Service

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

On the Control Display, you can have the remaining times or distances for selected maintenance tasks and any legally prescribed dates displayed, refer to page 76:

- Engine oil
- Brake pads: separately for front and rear
- Brake fluid
- Vehicle check
- Legally mandated inspections depending on local regulations

Service data in the remote control

Your vehicle continuously stores service-requirement information in the remote control while you are driving. Your BMW Service Advisor can read out this data from the remote control unit, and propose an optimized maintenance approach. Whenever you take your car in for servicing you should therefore hand your BMW Service Advisor the remote control unit that you last used.

Make sure that the date is always set correctly, refer to page 80; otherwise the effectiveness of Condition Based Service CBS is not assured.◀

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

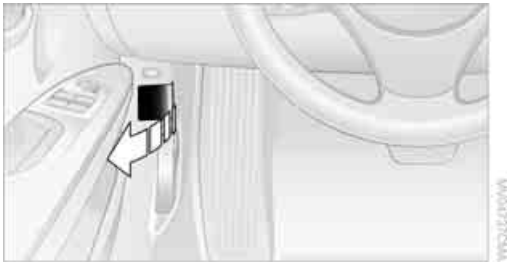
Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW center.
Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Socket for On-Board Diagnosis OBD



Primary components that make up exhaust emissions can be checked by a device via the OBD socket.

This socket is located on the driver's side to the left, on the bottom of the instrument panel underneath a cover.

Exhaust emission values

SERVICE ENGINE SOON The warning lamp lights up: The exhaust emission values have worsened. Have the car checked as soon as possible.

Canadian models display this warning lamp.

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This indicates excessive misfiring in the engine. If this happens, you should reduce your speed and visit your nearest BMW center as soon as possible. Severe engine misfiring can quickly lead to serious damage of emissions-related components, especially the catalytic converter.

The warning lamp comes on if the gas cap is not properly tightened and the OBD system assumes that fuel vapor is escaping. If the gas cap is then tightened, the warning lamp should go out within a few days.

Event data recorders

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or several measuring or diagnostic modules or a device for recording or sending certain vehicle data or information. In addition, if you have signed a service contract for BMW Assist, certain vehicle data may be transmitted or recorded in order to facilitate the corresponding services.

CarManuals2.com

Care

Important information on the care and maintenance of your BMW is contained in the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Replacing components

Onboard tool kit

Sedan

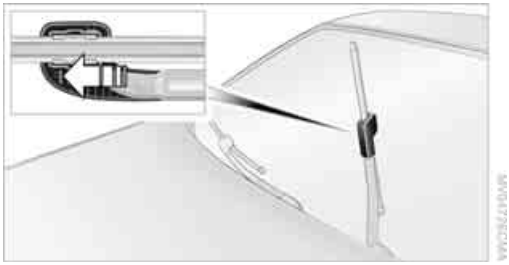
The onboard tool kit is stored in a compartment on the right-hand side of the cargo bay. Remove the cover.

Sports Wagon

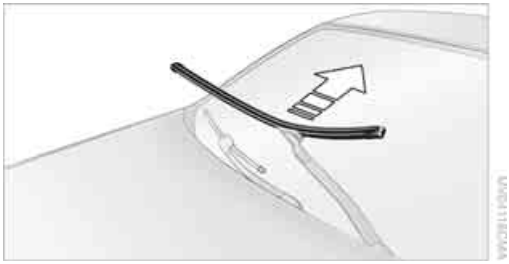
CarManuals2.com

The onboard tool kit is stored in a compartment on the left-hand side underneath the cargo bay floor panel.

Wiper blades



1. Fold up the wiper arm.
2. Remove the cover. To do so, press the hook on the bottom, see arrow.



3. Fold the wiper blade upwards.
4. Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the windshield, see arrow.

To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are against the windshield before you open the engine compartment.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Sports Wagon: changing rear wiper blade

1. Fold up the wiper arm.
2. Pull off the wiper blade, see arrow.
3. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it audibly engages.

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. They should, therefore, be handled carefully. BMW recommends having your BMW center perform any work that you do not feel competent to perform yourself or that is not described here.

Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

You can obtain a selection of replacement bulbs at your BMW center.

Only change bulbs while they are cool to the touch, otherwise you could suffer burns.◀

When working on electrical systems, always begin by switching off the consumer in question, otherwise short-circuits could result. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

For care and maintenance of the headlamps, please follow the instructions in the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure.

If the routine for changing a particular bulb is not described here, please contact your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.◀

Light-emitting diodes LED

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Do not remove the covers or expose the eyes directly to the unfiltered light source for several hours, otherwise this could cause irritation to the retina.◀

Xenon lamps*

These bulbs have a very long service life and are highly unlikely to fail. If a xenon lamp fails nevertheless, switch on the fog lamps and continue the journey with great care, provided that local legislation does not prohibit this.

Have any work on the xenon lamp system, including bulb replacements, performed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise, if such work is carried out improperly, the high voltage in the system presents the danger of fatal injuries.◀

Parking lamps, roadside parking lamps

In the event of a malfunction, please contact your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Halogen lamps

H7 bulb, 55 watts

Always wear gloves and eye protection; the atmosphere within the H7 bulb is pressurized. Otherwise there is a risk of injury if the bulb is damaged.◀

CarManuals2.com

There are separate headlamp covers for low-beam headlamps and high-beam headlamps.

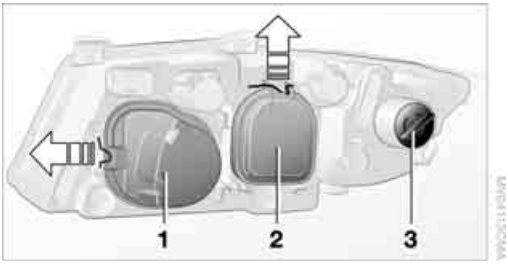
Be careful when installing the covers, otherwise leaks could occur and cause damage to the headlamp system.◀

For checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.◀

CarManuals2.com

Access to the lamps

The high-beam headlamp can be accessed from the engine compartment, whereas the low-beam headlamp is accessed through a flap in the wheel well.



1 Cover for high-beam headlamp

2 Cover for low-beam headlamp

3 Turn signal bulb socket

To remove the covers:

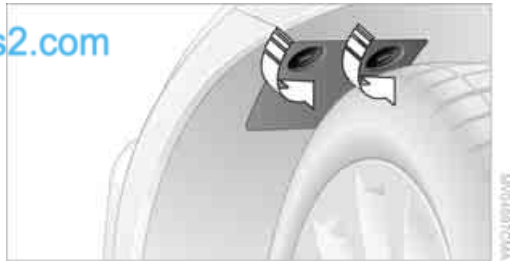
1. Fold the respective wire bracket to the side, see arrows.
2. Flip open the cover and take it out of the guide.

Follow the same steps in reverse order to reattach the covers.

Access through the wheel well

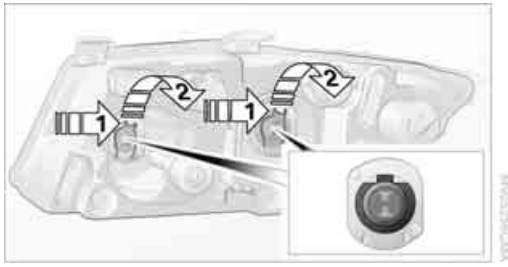
Only for low-beam headlamps and turn signals:

1. Turn the wheel inwards.
2. Open the flap in the wheel well. To do so, turn the fastener counterclockwise using a coin, for example.



Changing low-beam and high-beam bulbs

1. Remove the relevant cover for the headlamp.
2. Disconnect the plug from the lamp.
3. Push the wire bracket to the side out of the mounting, arrow **1**, and fold it down, arrow **2**.



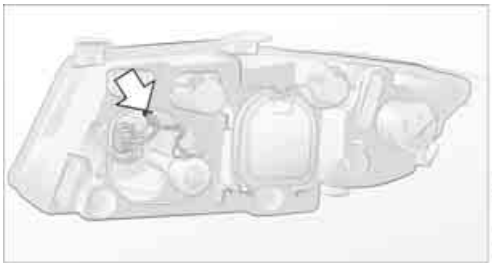
4. Remove the bulb.
5. Insert new bulb as shown in the detail of the illustration above.
6. Fold up the wire bracket and engage it.
7. Connect the plug.
8. Reattach the cover.

Parking lamps, roadside parking lamps

5-watt bulb, W5W

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Remove the cover for the high-beam headlamp.
2. Pull out the bulb socket, see arrow.



3. Remove and replace the bulb.
4. Insert bulb socket.
5. Reattach the cover.

Turn signals, front

21-watt bulb, PY21W
or PY21W Silver Vision

1. Open the flap in the wheel well, refer to Access through the wheel well on page 230.

2. Rotate turn signal bulb socket **1** to the left and remove.
3. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.
4. Insert turn signal bulb socket **1**.
5. Attach the flap to the wheel well.

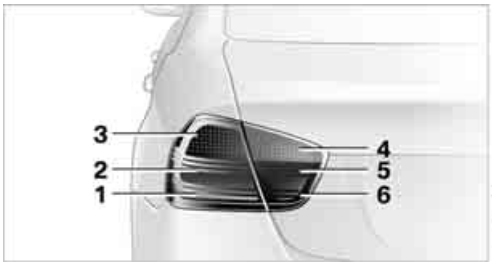
Tail lamps

Sedan

▷ Brake lamp in the luggage compartment lid:
H21W bulb, 21 watts

▷ Other lamps:
P21W bulb, 21 watts

The tail lamps are divided in two parts. One part is in the luggage compartment lid, the other is in the fender.



1 Brake lamp
2 Roadside parking lamp/tail lamp
3 Turn signal
4 Backup lamp
5 Tail lamp
6 Brake lamp

Sports Wagon

▷ Brake lamp in the tailgate:
H21W bulb, 21 watts

▷ Other lamps:
P21W bulb, 21 watts

The tail lamps are divided in two parts. One part is in the tailgate, the other is in the fender.

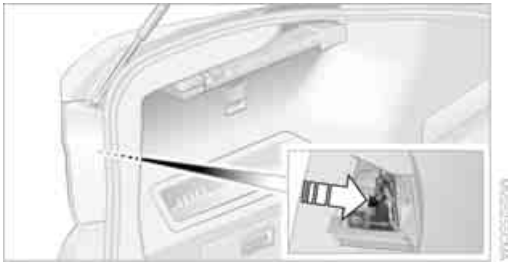
1 Brake lamp
2 Roadside parking lamp/tail lamp
3 Turn signal
4 Backup lamp
5 Tail lamp
6 Brake lamp

CarManuals2.com

Fender-mounted lamps

Sedan

1. Using a screwdriver, pry off the cover in the cargo bay or release the turn-lock fastener by turning it counterclockwise and remove the cover.
2. Loosen the bulb holder at the clip, see arrow, and pull out.



3. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.
4. Re-engage the bulb holder so that it audibly clicks into place.
5. Reattach the cover in the cargo bay.

Sports Wagon

1. Left-hand lamps:
   Open the flap on the left-hand side of the cargo bay.

   Right-hand lamps:
   Open the cargo bay floor panel. Turn the screws on the cover, arrows **1**, 90° and take out the cover, arrow **2**.

2. Loosen the bulb holder at the clip, see arrow, and pull out.

3. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.
4. Re-engage the bulb holder so that it audibly clicks into place.
5. Reattach the cover in the cargo bay.

Lamps in the luggage compartment lid/ tailgate

Sedan

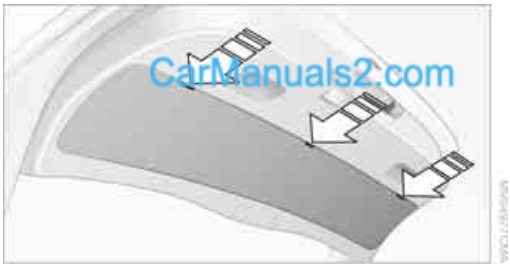
CarManuals2.com

1. Pry out the plastic plugs in the trim of the luggage compartment lid using a screwdriver and remove the trim.
2. Unfasten the bulb holder at the clip, see arrow, and remove.
3. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.
4. Re-engage the bulb holder so that it audibly clicks into place.
5. Reattach the trim of the luggage compartment lid.

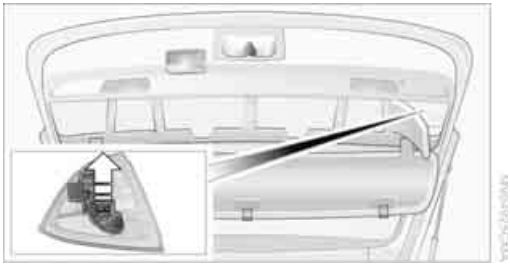
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Sports Wagon

1. Use a screwdriver to press out the cover at the clips, see arrows, and fold it downward.



2. Fold away the foam insulating material.
3. Release the bulb holder at the clip, see arrow, and remove.



4. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.
5. Re-engage the bulb holder so that it audibly clicks into place.
6. Reattach the trim of the tailgate.

License plate lamp and center brake lamp

These lamps use LED technology for operation. In the event of a malfunction, please contact your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Changing wheels

Your BMW is equipped with Run-Flat Tires as standard. This removes the need to change a wheel immediately in the event of a puncture.

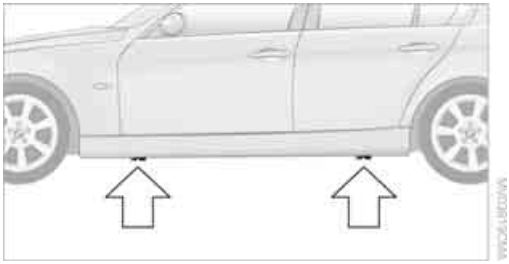
For information on continuing to drive with a damaged tire, refer to Indication of a flat tire on page 90.

The symbol identifying Run-Flat Tires is a circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall, refer to Run-Flat Tires, page 219.

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires and vice versa, mount Run-Flat Tires for your own safety. In the event of a flat, no spare wheel is available. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you. Refer also to New wheels and tires, page 219.

▷ The tools for changing wheels are available as optional accessories from your BMW center.◀

Jack mounting points



The jacking points are at the positions shown in the illustration.

Vehicle battery

Battery care

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate. Your BMW center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

Charging the battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle via the terminals in the engine compartment with the engine off. Connections, refer to Jump starting on page 236.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Disposal

Have old batteries disposed of by your BMW center or hand them in to a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always secure the battery against tipping over during transport.◀

Power failure

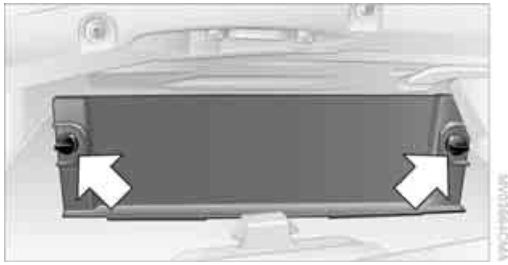
After a temporary power loss, the functioning of some equipment may be limited and require reinitialization. Individual settings may likewise have been lost and will have to be programmed:

- Time and date
  These values must be updated, refer to page 79.
- Radio
  In some cases, stations may have to be stored again, refer to page 162.
- Navigation system
  Operability must be waited for, refer to page 128.
- Glass roof
  It may happen that the roof can only be raised. The system must be initialized. Please contact your BMW center.
- Panorama glass roof
  It may happen that the roof can only be raised. The system must be initialized. Please contact your BMW center.
- Seat and mirror memory
  The positions must be stored again, refer to page 47.
- Inside rearview mirror with digital compass
  The system must be calibrated, refer to page 108.

CarManuals2.com

Fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating, otherwise this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◀



Open the cover in the glove compartment and remove it.

Spare fuses and a pair of plastic forceps are set in holders on the distributor box.

See the rear of the cover for information on fuse assignment.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Giving and receiving assistance

Emergency Request*

Conditions for an Emergency Request:

- ▷ Equipment version with full preparation package mobile phone. This equipment makes it possible to send an Emergency Request even if no mobile phone is paired with the vehicle.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated. Activating BMW Assist, refer to page 202.
- ▷ Radio readiness is on.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network.
- ▷ The Emergency Request system is operable.

Once your service contract for BMW Assist expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW center without you having to visit a workshop. Once the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, Emergency Requests are not possible. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after a new contract has been signed.

Sending an Emergency Request

1. Briefly press the cover flap to open.

2. Press the SOS button for at least 2 seconds.

The LED in the button lights up. As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established, the LED flashes.

Once the BMW Assist Response Center has received your Emergency Request, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you. Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center will be able to initiate further steps to assist you under certain conditions.

If the circumstances allow this, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

If the current location of your vehicle can be determined, it will be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard over the hands-free system, it is possible that the hands-free system is malfunctioning. You may still be heard by the BMW Assist Response Center, however.

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is sent automatically immediately after a severe accident. This Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by the button being pressed.

⚠ For technical reasons, the Emergency Request service cannot be guaranteed for the most unfavorable conditions.◀

Roadside Assistance

The BMW Roadside Assistance is there to assist you around the clock in the event of a breakdown, including on weekends and public holidays.

The phone numbers of the Roadside Assistance in your home country can be found in the Contact brochure.

In vehicles equipped with BMW Assist, you can establish contact with BMW Roadside Assistance for breakdown assistance directly via iDrive, refer to page 198.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

First aid pouch*

Some of the articles contained in the first aid pouch have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any items in good time, if necessary.

Sedan

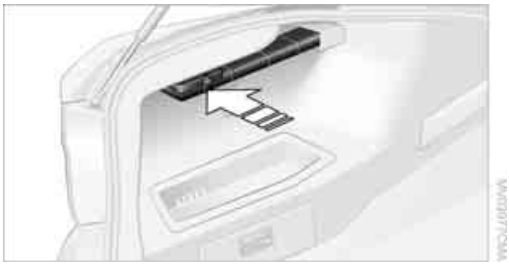
The first aid pouch is located on the right-hand side of the cargo bay in a storage area.

Sports Wagon

The first aid pouch is located in the cargo bay behind the left-hand trim panel.

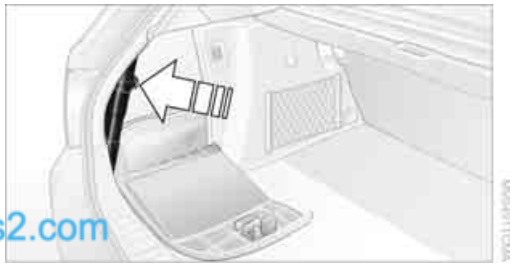
Warning triangle*

Sedan



The warning triangle is located on the left-hand side of the cargo bay. Press the tab to take it out.

Sports Wagon



CarManuals2.com

The warning triangle is located behind the left-hand trim panel in the cargo bay. Press the tab to take it out.

Jump starting

If the car's own battery is flat, your BMW's engine can be started by connecting two jumper cables to another vehicle's battery. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Only use jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

Do not touch any electrically live parts when the engine is running, or a fatal accident may occur. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any consumers in both vehicles.

There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles, otherwise there is a danger of shorting.◀

Connecting jumper cables

Connect the jumper cables in the correct order, so that no sparks which could cause injury occur.◀

Your BMW has a jump-starting connection in the engine compartment which acts as the battery's positive terminal, refer also to the Engine compartment overview on page 222. The cap is marked with +.

1. Pull the cap of the BMW jump-starting connection up to remove.

2. Attach one terminal clamp of the plus/+ jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery or a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second terminal clamp of the plus/+ jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery or a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the minus/– jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.

   Your BMW has a special nut as body ground or negative pole.

CarManuals2.com

5. Attach the second terminal clamp of the minus/– jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

1. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at slightly increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
   If the first start attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the above connecting sequence.

If necessary, have the battery checked and recharged.

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

Tow-starting, towing away

Observe the applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing vehicles.◀

Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

Using a tow fitting

The screw-in tow fitting must always be carried in the car. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

Sedan: it is stored in the onboard tool kit underneath the cover on the right-hand side of the cargo bay, refer to page 228.

CarManuals2.com

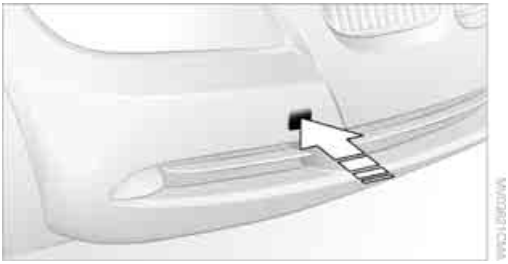
Sports Wagon: it is stored in the onboard tool kit underneath the cover on the left-hand side of the cargo bay, refer to page 228.

Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in. Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise the tow fitting and the vehicle could be damaged.◀

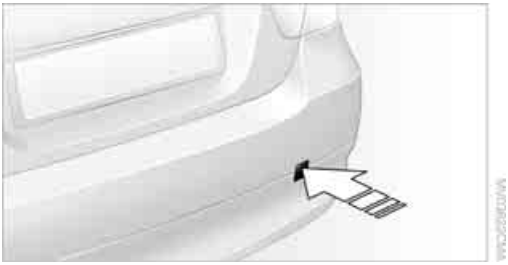
Access to screw thread

Rectangular cover panel in bumper:
Press on the upper edges of the cover panel.

Front



Rear



Being towed

Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 56, otherwise the low-beam headlamps, tail lamps, turn signal indicators and windshield wipers may be unavailable.

Power steering assistance is not available when the engine is not running. Thus, braking and steering will require increased effort. Active steering is not active and it will be necessary to turn the steering wheel further.◀

Switch on the hazard warning flashers, depending on local regulations.

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in idle position.

Automatic transmission

Selector lever in position N.
Changing selector lever positions, refer to page 59.

Do not exceed a towing speed of 45 mph or 70 km/h and a towing distance of 90 miles/150 km, otherwise the automatic transmission may be damaged.◀

Towing methods

In some countries, it is illegal to tow your vehicle with a tow bar or tow rope on public highways.

Please familiarize yourself with the relevant towing regulations for the country in which you are driving.

With a tow bar

The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the towed vehicle, otherwise it may be impossible to maintain control.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is attached offset.

Attach the tow bar to the tow fittings only, as attaching it to other parts of the vehicle could result in damage.◀

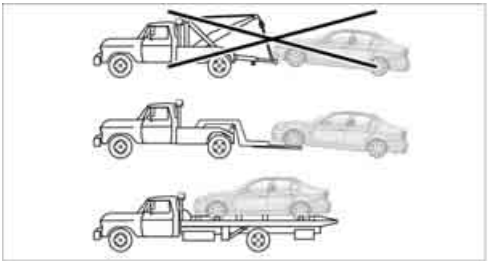
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

With a tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Attach the tow rope to the tow fittings only, as attaching it to other parts of the vehicle could result in damage.◀

With a tow truck: vehicle without xDrive



Have the BMW transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

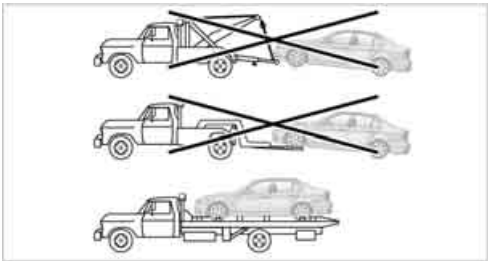
Do not tow the vehicle with just the rear axle raised as this may cause the steering to turn.

CarManuals2.com

Do not lift the vehicle by a tow fitting or body and chassis parts, otherwise damage may result.◀

With a tow truck: vehicle with xDrive

Do not tow a BMW with xDrive with just the front or rear axle raised, otherwise the wheels could lock up and the transfer case could be damaged.◀



Have the BMW transported on a flatbed surface only.

Tow-starting

Avoid tow-starting the vehicle whenever possible; instead, jump-start the engine, refer to page 236. Vehicles with a catalytic converter should only be tow-started when the engine is cold, vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be tow-started at all.

1. Switch on hazard warning flashers, comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 56.
3. Shift into 3rd gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch depressed and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch completely again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

With xDrive: do not activate Hill Descent Control HDC when the vehicle is being tow-started, page 87.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Reference

This chapter contains technical data, short commands for the voice command system and an index that will help you find information most quickly.

Technical data

Engine data

Sedan

		323i (Canada)	328i/xi	335i/xi
Displacement	cu in/cm³	152.4/2,497	182.8/2,996	181.8/2,979
Number of cylinders		6	6	6
Maximum power output	hp	200	230	300
at engine speed	rpm	6,000	6,500	5,800
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	180/244	200/270	300/407
at engine speed	rpm	4,000 - 5,000	2,750	1,400 - 5,000

Sports Wagon

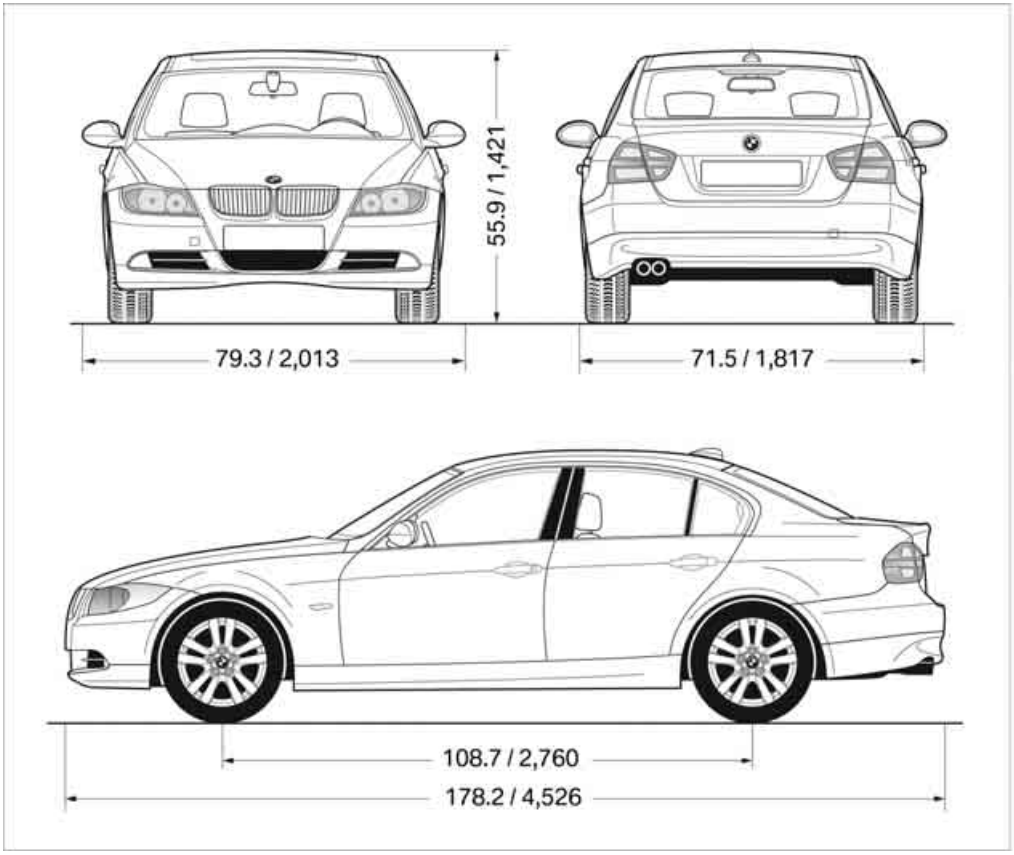
		328i/xi
Displacement	cu in/cm³	182.8/2,996
Number of cylinders		6
Maximum power output	hp	230
at engine speed	rpm	6,500
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	200/270
at engine speed	rpm	2,750

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Dimensions

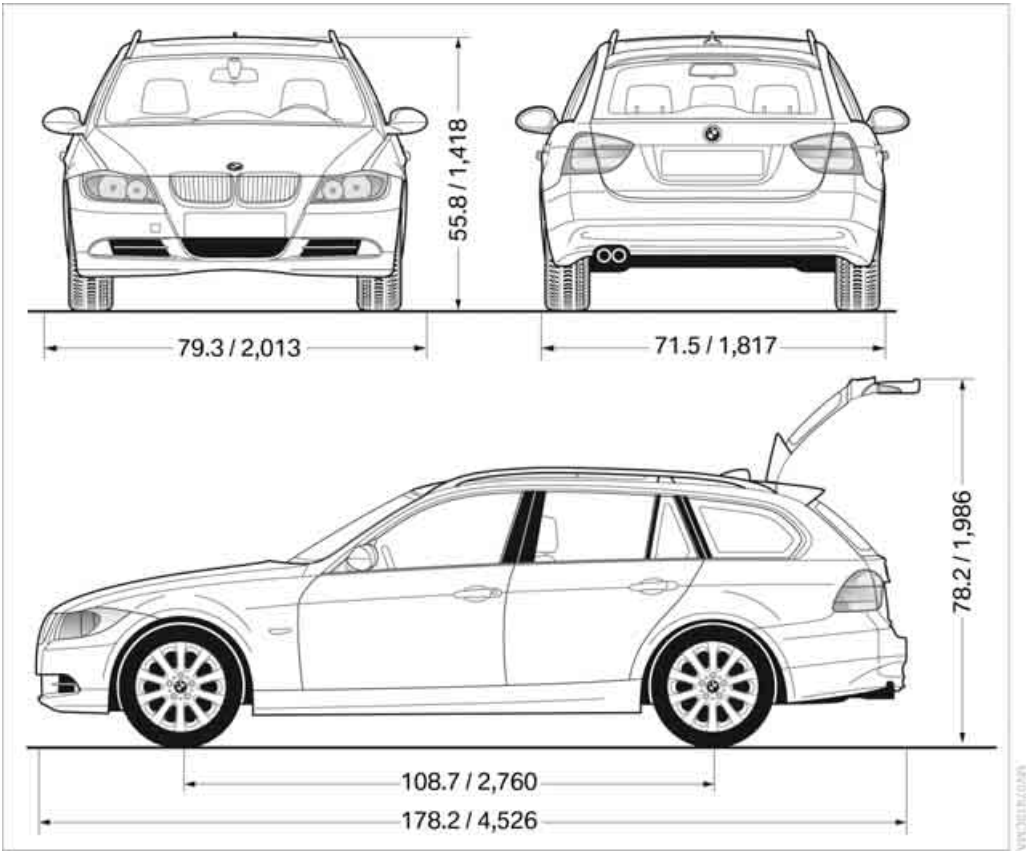
Sedan



All dimensions given in inches/mm.
Smallest turning circle diam.: 36 ft 1 in/11.0 m, with xDrive: 38 ft 9 in/11.8 m.

CarManuals2.com

Sports Wagon



All dimensions given in inches/mm.
Smallest turning circle diam.: 36 ft 1 in/11.0 m, with xDrive: 38 ft 9 in/11.8 m.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Weights

Sedan

		323i (Canada)	328i	328xi
Curb weight				
▷ with manual transmission	lbs/kg	3,274/1,485	3,340/1,515	3,582/1,625
▷ with automatic transmission	lbs/kg	3,329/1,510	3,406/1,545	3,627/1,645
Approved gross weight				
▷ with manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,332/1,965	4,398/1,995	4,641/2,105
▷ with automatic transmission	lbs/kg	4,387/1,990	4,464/2,025	4,685/2,125
Load	lbs/kg	1,058/480	1,058/480	1,058/480
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,083/945	2,116/960	2,293/1,040
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,403/1,090	2,458/1,115	2,502/1,135
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75	165/75	165/75
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	16.2/460	16.2/460	16.2/460

		335i	335xi
Curb weight			
▷ with manual transmission	lbs/kg	3,593/1,630	3,814/1,730
▷ with automatic transmission	lbs/kg	3,605/1,635	3,824/1,735
Approved gross weight			
▷ with manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,652/2,110	4,872/2,210
▷ with automatic transmission	lbs/kg	4,663/2,115	4,883/2,215
Load	lbs/kg	1,058/480	1,058/480
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,238/1,015	2,436/1,105
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,531/1,145	2,546/1,155
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75	165/75
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	15.9/450	15.9/450

CarManuals2.com

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Sports Wagon

		328i	328xi
Curb weight			
▷ with manual transmission	lbs/kg	3,527/1,600	3,770/1,710
▷ with automatic transmission	lbs/kg	3,593/1,630	3,814/1,730
Approved gross weight			
▷ with manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,630/2,100	4,872/2,210
▷ with automatic transmission	lbs/kg	4,696/2,130	4,916/2,230
Load	lbs/kg	1,102/500	1,102/500
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,127/965	2,326/1,055
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,646/1,200	2,646/1,200
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75	165/75
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	16.2/460 - 48.9/1,385	16.2/460 - 48.9/1,385

CarManuals2.com

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	approx. 16.1/61	Fuel grade: page 207
including reserve of	US gal/liters	approx. 2.1/8.0	
Window washer system			For more details: page 62
including headlamp washers	US quarts/liters	approx. 6.3/6.0	

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Short commands for the voice command system*

With short commands you can carry out certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected. Here are the important short commands for the voice command system.

Assistance window

Function	Command
To open assistance window 20	›Assistance window‹
To select display in the assistance window 20	›Assistance window map facing north‹, ›Assistance window map direction of travel‹, ›Assistance window arrow display‹, ›Assistance window perspective‹, ›Assistance window current position‹, ›Assistance window trip computer‹ or ›Assistance window onboard info‹
To change the scale in the assistance window 145	›Assistance window scale ... feet‹ or ›Assistance window scale ... miles‹

Communication

Function	Command
To open phone 189	›Phone‹
To dial phone number 189	›Dial number‹
To display phone book 189	›A to Z‹
To select from phone book 189	›Call ...‹ or ›Dial name‹
To display "Top 8" 189	›Top 8‹
Redialing 189	›Redial‹
To display "Received calls" 189	›Received calls‹
To display "Missed calls" 189	›Missed calls‹
To display "Bluetooth" 183	›Bluetooth‹
To open BMW Assist 202	›BMW Assist‹
To open "BMW Service" services 198	›BMW Service‹
To open "BMW Contact" 191	›BMW Contact‹
To open "BMW Contact Numbers" 191	›BMW Contact numbers‹
To open "Roadside Assistance" 198	›Roadside Assistance‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Navigation

Function	Command
To open navigation 136	›Navigation‹
To display current position 151	›Current position‹
To open "Enter address" 130	›Enter address‹
To open "New destination" 130	›New destination‹
To display "Input map" 135	›Input map‹
To open "Information" 136	›Info menu‹
To display address book 138	›Address book‹ or ›From address book‹
To display destination list 137	›Destination list‹
To switch on destination guidance 143	›Start guidance‹
To switch off destination guidance 143	›Stop guidance‹
To display route criteria 141	›Route preference‹
To switch on voice instructions 146	›Navigation info on‹
To switch off voice instructions 146	›Navigation info off‹
To repeat voice instructions 147	›Repeat navigation info‹
To show arrow display 144	›Arrow display‹
To display map 145	›Map‹, ›Map facing north‹, ›Map direction of travel‹ or ›Perspective‹
To open route 132, 147	›Route menu‹
To open "New route" 147	›New route‹
To change scale 145	›Scale ... miles‹ or ›Scale ... feet‹
To display towns/cities and streets along the route 146	›Route list‹

Onboard info

Function	Command
To open "Car Data" 73	›Car Data‹
To display computer 73	›Onboard info‹
To display trip computer 74	›Trip computer‹
To open speed limit 83	›Limit‹
To open stopwatch 83	›Stopwatch‹
To activate road-speed limit 83	›Limit on‹
To deactivate road-speed limit 83	›Limit off‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Entertainment

Function	Command
Tone control 157	›Audio‹
To switch on radio 160	›Radio on‹, ›FM‹ or ›AM‹
To open "FM" 160	›FM menu‹
To open "AM" 160	›AM menu‹
To open "All stations" 160	›FM All stations‹
To select radio station 160	›Station‹ e.g. ›Station WNYC‹ or ›Choose station‹
To open "Presets" 160	›FM presets‹ or ›AM presets‹
To open "Manual" 161	›FM manual‹ or ›AM manual‹ or ›Choose frequency‹, ›Frequency ... Megahertz‹
To select preset radio station 162	›Preset ...‹ e.g. ›Preset 1‹
To open strongest radio stations 161	›AM Autostore‹
To open "SAT" 167	›SAT radio menu‹
To switch on satellite radio 167	›SAT radio‹
To open "Presets" of the satellite radio 168	›SAT radio presets‹
To open "All channels" of the satellite radio 167	›SAT radio all channels‹
To open "Categories" of the satellite radio 167	›SAT radio categories‹
To open CD player 169	›CD menu‹
To switch on CD player 169	›CD‹
To open CD changer 169	›CD changer menu‹
To switch on CD changer 169	›CD changer‹
To select a CD in the CD changer 169	›CD 1...6‹
To select track 170	›CD track ...‹
To select a CD and track in the CD changer 170	›CD 1...6 track ...‹
To select track 170	›Track ...‹
To open DVD 169	›DVD player menu‹
To switch on DVD 169	›DVD player‹
To select music track on DVD 170	›DVD track ...‹
To start sound output for external audio device 175	›Audio Aux on‹

CarManuals2.com

Climate

Function	Command
To open "Vent settings" 101	›Vent settings‹
To open "Automatic programs" 102	›Automatic programs‹

i Menu

Function	Command
To open the i menu	›Settings menu‹
"Display off" 21	›Display off‹
To open "Info sources"	›Info sources‹
To open "Settings"	›Settings‹
To open "Door locks" 29, 32	›Door locks‹
To open "Steering wheel buttons" 50	›Steering wheel buttons‹
To open "Lighting" 61	›Lighting‹
To open "BMW Service" 198	›BMW Service‹
To open "Service requirements" 77, 197	›Service requirements‹
To open "Service" 77, 197	›Service‹
To display "Check Control messages" 81	›Check Control messages‹
To set brightness of Control Display 84	›Brightness‹
To open "Units" 71	›Units‹
To open "Language" 84, 146	›Languages‹
To open "Time" 79	›Time‹
To open "Date" 80	›Date‹
To open "PDC" 85	›PDC‹
To open "FTM" 89	›FTM‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Everything from A-Z

Index

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions and refers you to the page where these texts can be found.

A

ABS Antilock Brake System 86
ACC, refer to Active cruise control 64
Accident, refer to Sending an Emergency Request 235
Activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 104
"Activation time" 104
Active cruise control 64
– indicator lamps 67
– malfunction 68
– selecting distance 66
– sensor 68
Active steering 93
– warning lamp 93
Adaptive Head Light 98
"Add digits" for mobile phone 190
Additives
– coolant 224
"Address book" in navigation 138
Address for navigation
– deleting 140
– entering 130, 138
– selecting 139
– storing 138
– storing current position 139
"Add to destination list" 133, 135
Adjusting temperature inside the car, refer to Automatic climate control 101
Adjusting the thigh support 44
Adjusting the tone during audio operation, refer to Tone control 157
Airbags 94
– indicator/warning lamp 95
– sitting safely 43
Air conditioning mode
– automatic climate control 101
– ventilation 103
Air distribution
– automatic 102
– individual 101
Air flow rate 102
Airing, refer to Ventilation 103
Air pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 208
Air recirculation, refer to Recirculated-air mode 102
"Air recirculation on / off" 51
Air supply
– automatic climate control 101
– ventilation 103
Air vents 100
AKI, refer to Fuel specifications 207
Alarm system 35
– avoiding unintentional alarms 36
– interior motion sensor 36
– switching off an alarm 36
– tilt alarm sensor 36
"All channels" for satellite radio 167
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 220
"All stations", displaying with the radio 160
All-wheel drive, refer to xDrive 87
"AM", waveband 156, 160
Ambient air, refer to Recirculated-air mode 102
Antenna for mobile phone 182
Antifreeze
– coolant 224
– washer fluid 62
Anti-theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 35
Anti-theft system 29
Approved axle loads, refer to Weights 245
Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 245
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 110
Arrival time, refer to Computer 73
Arrival time, refer to Starting destination guidance 143
Arrow display for navigation 144
"Arrow display" in navigation 144
Ashtray
– front 111
– rear 112
Assistance systems, refer to Driving stability control systems 86
Assistance window 20
– refer to iDrive 20
AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 102
"Audio" 159, 163
Audio 156
– controls 156
– switching on/off 156
– tone control 157
– volume 157
"Audio", refer to Tone control 157
Audio device, external 110

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Automatic
– air distribution 102
– air flow rate 102
– cruise control 63, 64
– headlamp control 96
– service notification 199
– storing of stations 161
Automatic climate control 100
– automatic air distribution 102
– settings via iDrive 101
Automatic curb monitor 49
"Automatic programs" with automatic climate control 102
Automatic recirculated-air control AUC 102
Automatic station search 161
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 58
– interlock 58, 59
– overriding selector lever lock 60
– shiftlock, refer to Changing selector lever position 59
– sport program 59
– towing 237
– tow-starting 237
"Automatic ventilation" 104
AUTO program for automatic climate control 102
"Auto Request" 199
"Autostore"
– on the radio 162
"AUX" 156, 175, 177
– AUX-In port 175
– USB-audio interface 176
AUX-IN
– port 110
AUX-In port 175
Average fuel consumption 73
– setting the units 76
Average speed 73
"Avoid ferries" in navigation 141
"Avoid highways" in navigation 141
Avoid highways in navigation 141
Avoiding unintentional alarms 36
"Avoid tollroads" in navigation 141
Axle loads, refer to Weights 245
"A - Z" 189, 190

B

Backrest contour, refer to Lumbar support 45
Backrests, refer to Seat adjustment 44
Backrest width adjustment 45
Back seats
– refer to Rear seats 46
Backup lamps
– replacing bulb 232
Backup lamps, refer to Tail lamps 231
Balance, tone control 157
Band-aids, refer to First-aid pouch 236
Bar, refer to Towing methods 238
Base plate for telephone or mobile phone
– refer to Snap-in adapter in the center armrest storage compartment 110
Bass, tone control 157
Bass sounds, refer to Treble and bass 157
Battery 233
– charging 233
– disposal 38, 234
– jump starting 236
– remote control 28
– temporary power failure 234
Battery renewal
– remote control 38
– remote control for vehicle 38
Being towed 238
Belts, refer to Safety belts 48
Belt tensioner, refer to Safety belts 48
Beverage holders, refer to Cup holders 111
Blower, refer to Air flow rate 102
Bluetooth, refer to separate Owner's Manual
"BMW Assist" 198, 199, 200
BMW Assist
– activating 202
– Concierge service 200
– contacting BMW Customer Relations 200
– Roadside Assistance 198
– services offered 197
– TeleService 199
"BMW Contact" 192
"BMW Contact Numbers" 192
BMW Homepage 4
BMW Maintenance System 226
"BMW Service settings" 203
BMW webpage 4
Bottle holders, refer to Cup holders 111
Brake assist, refer to Dynamic Brake Control DBC 86
Brake fluid, refer to Service requirements 76
Brake Force Display 93
Brake lamps
– replacing bulb 232
– two-stage 93
Brake pads 120
– breaking in 120
Brake rotors 122
– brakes 120
– breaking in 120
Brakes
– ABS 86
– BMW Maintenance System 226
– breaking in 120
– parking brake 57
– service requirements 76
Brakes, refer to Braking safely 122

CarManuals2.com

Brake system 120
– BMW Maintenance System 226
– breaking in 120
– disc brakes 122
Breakdown services, refer to Roadside Assistance 235
Breaking in the clutch 120
Breaking in the differential, refer to Engine and differential 120
Break-in period 120
Brightness of the Control Display 84
"Brightness" on the Control Display 84
Bulb changing, refer to Lamps and bulbs 229
Button for starting the engine, refer to Start/stop button 56
Buttons on the steering wheel 11

C

California Proposition 65 warning 6
"Call" 190, 201
Call
– accepting 188
– displaying accepted 190
– ending 189
– missed 190
– starting 189
Calling
– from phone book 189
– from Top 8 list 190
– redialing 190
Can holders, refer to Cup holders 111
Capacities 246
Capacity of the cargo bay 245
Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery 233
Car care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Car-care products, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
"Car Data" 73
Care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Cargo, securing 124
Cargo bay 114
– capacity 245
– convenient access 37
– folding up the floor panel 116
– lamp, refer to Interior lamps 99
– opening from inside 33
– opening from outside 33
– partition net 114
– roll-up cover 114
Cargo bay lid, refer to Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate 33
Cargo bay net, refer to Partition net 114
Cargo loading
– securing cargo 124
– stowing cargo 123
– vehicle 123
Caring for artificial leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for plastic, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for the carpet, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for the vehicle finish, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Car jack
– jacking points 233
Car key, refer to Integrated key/remote control 28
Car phone 182
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 110
– refer to Mobile phone 182
– refer to separate Owner's Manual
Car radio, refer to Radio 160
Car wash 122
– also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– with convenient access 37
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 121
"Categories" for satellite radio 167
CBS Condition Based Service 226
"CD" 156, 169
CD changer 169
– compressed audio files 169
– controls 156
– fast forward/reverse 173
– installation location 173
– playing a track 171
– random order 172
– repeating a track 172
– selecting a CD 169
– selecting a track 170
– switching on/off 156
– tone control 157
– volume 157
CD player 169
– compressed audio files 169
– controls 156
– fast forward/reverse 173
– playing a track 171
– random order 172
– repeating a track 172
– selecting a track 170
– switching on/off 156
– tone control 157
– volume 157
Center armrest 110
Center brake lamp
– replacing bulb 233
Center console, refer to Around the center console 14
"Central locking" 30
Central locking
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
Central locking system 29
– convenient access 36
– hotel function 34

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Changes, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Changing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 229
Changing the language on the Control Display 84
Changing the measurement units on the Control Display 76
Changing wheels 233
Chassis number, refer to Engine compartment 222
Check Control 81
"Check Control messages" 83
Check Gas Cap 206
Child-restraint fixing system LATCH 53
Child-restraint systems 52
Child-safety lock 55
Child seats, refer to Transporting children safely 52
Chrome parts, care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Cigarette lighter, refer to Lighter 111
Cleaning, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Cleaning headlamps 62
– washer fluid 62
"Climate" 101
Clock 71
– 12h/24h mode 80
– setting time 79
Closing
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
Clothes hooks 110
Cockpit 10
Cold start, refer to Starting the engine 57
Combined instrument, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Comfort access, refer to Convenient access 36
Comfort area, refer to Around the center console 14
"Communication" 188, 198, 199, 200
Compact disc, refer to
– CD changer 169
– CD player 169
Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 56
Compass 108
Computer 73
– displays on Control Display 73
– hour signal 80
Computer, refer to iDrive 16
"Concert hall" for Tone control 158
"Concierge" 200
Concierge service 200
Condensation, refer to When the vehicle is parked 122
Condition Based Service CBS 226
Configuring settings, refer to Personal Profile 28
Confirmation signals for locking/unlocking the vehicle 31
Connecting vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical appliances 112
Consumption, refer to Average consumption 73
Consumption display
– average consumption 73
– Energy Control 72
"Continue guidance to destination?" 144
Control Center, refer to iDrive 16
Control Display
– brightness 84
– changing the language 84
– switching off/on 21
Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
Controller, refer to iDrive 16
Controls and displays 10
Control unit, refer to iDrive 16
Convenient access 36
– replacing the battery 38
– what to observe before entering a car wash 37
Convenient operation
– glass roof 30
– windows 30
Coolant 224
– checking level 225
Coolant temperature 72
Cooling, maximum 102
Cooling fluid, refer to Coolant 224
Cooling system, refer to Coolant 224
Copyright 2
Corner-illuminating lamps, refer to Adaptive Head Light 98
Cornering lamps, refer to Adaptive Head Light 98
Correct tires 219
Courtesy lamps, refer to Interior lamps 99
Cross-hairs in navigation 135
Cruise control 63
– active 64
– malfunction 64
Cruising range 73
Cup holders 111
Curb weight, refer to Weights 245
Current fuel consumption, refer to Energy Control 72
"Current position" 151
Current position
– displaying 151
– entering 139
– storing 139
"Customer Relations" 192, 200

D

Dashboard, refer to Cockpit 10
Dashboard, refer to Instrument cluster 12

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Dashboard lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 99
Data, technical 242
– dimensions 243
– engine 242
– weights 245
"Date" 81
Date
– setting 80
– setting format 81
"Date format" 81
"Daytime running lamps" 97
Daytime running lamps 97
DBC Dynamic Brake Control 86
"Deactivated" 48
Deactivating front passenger airbags 94
Deadlocking, refer to Locking 30
Decommissioning the vehicle, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Defect
– door lock 31
– fuel filler door 206
– glass roof 40
– panorama glass roof 42
"Delete address book" in navigation 140
"Delete all numbers" on the mobile phone 191
"Delete data" in navigation 140
"Delete" for mobile phone 191
Destination address
– deleting 140
– entering 130, 134
Destination for navigation
– destination list 137
– entry 130
– home address 140
– manual entry 130, 134
– selecting from address book 139
– selecting using information 136
– selecting via language 134
– selecting via map 135
– storing 138
Destination guidance 143
– canceling voice instructions 51
– changing specified route 141
– displaying route 144
– distance and arrival 143
– starting 143
– terminating/continuing 143
– voice instructions 146
– volume of voice instructions 147
Destination list for navigation system 137
Destinations recently driven to 137
"Details" for audio mode 177
"Dial" for mobile phone 189
"Dial number" 189
Digital clock 71
Digital compass 108
Digital radio, refer to High Definition Radio 163
Dimensions 243
Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals 60
Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions 146
Directory for navigation, refer to Address book 138
Displacement, refer to Engine data 242
Display, refer to iDrive controls 16
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 99
"Display off" 21
Displays
– on the Control Display 16
Displays, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Displays and controls 10
Disposal
– coolant 224
– remote control battery 38
– vehicle battery 234
Distance control, refer to Active cruise control 64
Distance remaining to service, refer to Service requirements 76
"Distance to dest." 74
Distance warning, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 85
Door key, refer to Remote control with integrated key 28
Door lock 31
"Door locks" 30, 31, 32, 77
Doors, emergency operation 31
DOT Quality Grades 217
Draft-free ventilation 103
Drinks holders, refer to Cup holders 111
Drive-off assistance, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC 86
Drive-off assistant 88
Driving around a traffic congestion 150
Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 96
Driving notes 120
Driving off on hills, refer to Drive-off assistant 88
Driving route, refer to Displaying route 144
Driving stability control systems 86
Driving through water 122
Driving tips, refer to Driving notes 120
Dry air, refer to Cooling function 103

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

DSC Dynamic Stability Control 86
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 87
– indicator/warning lamp 87
DVD for navigation 128
Dynamic Brake Control DBC 86
"Dynamic route" in navigation 141
Dynamic Stability Control DSC
– indicator/warning lamp 87
Dynamic Traction Control DTC
– indicator/warning lamp 87

E

EBV Electronic brake-force distribution 86
Eject button, refer to Buttons on the CD player 156
Electrical malfunction
– door lock 31
– driver's door 31
– fuel filler door 206
– glass roof 40
– luggage compartment lid/ tailgate 33
– panorama glass roof 42
Electric seat adjustment 44
Electric steering wheel lock
– with convenient access 37
Electronic oil level check 222
Emergency actuation, automatic transmission, refer to Overriding selector lever lock 60
Emergency operation
– fuel filler door, manual release 206
Emergency operation, refer to Closing manually
– glass roof 40
– panorama glass roof 42
Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
– door lock 31
Emergency release
– luggage compartment lid from inside 34
Emergency Request 235
Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance 235
"Enabled services" 202
"Enable services" 203
"End call" 189
Energy, saving
– saving fuel 120
Energy-conscious driving, refer to Energy Control 72
Energy Control 72
Engine
– breaking in 120
– data 242
– overheated, refer to Coolant temperature 72
– speed 242
– starting 57
– starting, convenient access 36
– switching off 57
Engine compartment 222
Engine coolant, refer to Coolant 224
Engine oil
– adding 224
– BMW Maintenance System 226
– capacity 246
– checking level 222
– intervals between changes, refer to Service requirements 76
"Engine oil level" 223
Engine output, refer to Engine data 242
Engine speed, refer to Engine data 242
Engine starting, refer to Starting the engine 57
"Enter address" 131
Entering a destination 131
Entering a destination country 131
Entering a house number or intersection 133
Entering an intersection 132
Entering a street 132
"Entertainment" 156
Entry lamps, refer to Interior lamps 99
Environmentally friendly driving, refer to Energy Control 72
"Equalizer", refer to Tone control 159
Equalizer, refer to Tone control 158
Error messages, refer to Check Control 81
"ESN" 166
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 86
Event data recorders 227
Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system 121
Expanding the cargo bay 114
Exterior mirrors 49
– adjusting 49
– automatic dimming feature 50
– automatic heating 49
– folding in and out 49
External audio device 110
External audio device, refer to AUX-In port 175
Eyes
– for tow-starting and towing away 238
– for tying down loads 124

F

Fader, tone control 157
Failure messages, refer to Check Control 81
Failure of an electrical consumer 234
False alarm
– avoiding unintentional alarm 36
– switching off an alarm 36

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts 48
Fastest route for navigation 141
Fast forward
– CD changer 173
– CD player 173
"Fast route" in navigation 141
Filter
– refer to Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 104
Fine wood, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
First aid pouch 236
Fixture for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 56
Flashlight, refer to LED hand lamp 110
Flash when locking/unlocking 31
Flat tire
– Run-Flat Tires 219
– Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 90
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 89
– indicating a flat tire 90
– indicator/warning lamp 90
– initializing the system 89
– malfunction 90
– snow chains 89, 220
– system limits 89
Flat tires, refer to Tire condition 218
Floor mats, carpets, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Fluid reservoir, refer to Washer fluid reservoir 62
"FM", waveband 156, 160
FM, waveband 160
Fog lamps 98
– indicator lamp 13, 98
Folding in the mirrors, before driving into a car wash 49
Folding rear seat backrest 114
Folding up the floor panel 116
Footbrake, refer to Braking safely 122
Footwell lamps, refer to Interior lamps 99
For your own safety 5
Four-wheel drive, refer to xDrive 87
Frequency, selecting manually 161
Front airbags 94
FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 89
Fuel 207
– average consumption 73
– gauge 72
– high-quality brands 207
– quality 207
– specifications 207
– tank contents, refer to Capacities 246
Fuel clock, refer to Fuel gauge 72
Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge 72
Fuel-efficient driving, refer to Energy Control 72
Fuel filler door 206
– releasing in the event of electrical malfunction 206
Fuses 234

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 106
Gasoline
– refer to Average consumption 73
Gasoline, refer to Required fuel 207
Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge 72
Gear indicator, automatic transmission with Steptronic 58
Gearshift lever
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
– manual transmission 58
Gearshifts
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
– manual transmission 58
General driving notes 121
Glass roof, electric 39
– closing after electrical malfunction 40
– convenient operation 30, 31
– initializing 40
– opening, closing 39
– pinch protection system 40
– power failure 40
– raising 39
– remote control 30
Glove compartment 109
– LED hand lamp 110
GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 128
Grills 100
Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 245

H

Halogen lamps
– replacing bulbs 229
Handbrake, refer to Parking brake 57
Hand lamp, refer to LED hand lamp 110
Hands-free system 14
Hazard warning flashers 14
HDC Hill Descent Control 87
"HD radio" 163
HD radio, refer to High Definition Radio 163
Head airbags 94
Headlamp control, automatic 96
Headlamp cover 229
Headlamp flasher 60
– indicator lamp 11, 13
Headlamps
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– replacing bulbs 229

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Head restraints 45
– front, removing 46
– rear, removing 46
– sitting safely 43
Heated
– mirrors 49
– rear window 103
– seats 47
Heating
– mirrors 49
– rear window 103
– residual heat 103
– seats 47
Heating and ventilation, refer to Climate 100
Heating while at a standstill, refer to Using residual heat 103
Heavy loads, refer to Stowing cargo 123
Height, refer to Dimensions 243
Height adjustment
– seats 44
– steering wheel 50
High beams 98
– headlamp flasher 98
– indicator lamp 13
– replacing bulbs 229
High Definition Radio 163
High water, refer to Driving through water 122
Highways, refer to Route criteria 141
Hill Descent Control HDC 87
Hills 122
Holders for cups 111
Home address 140
"Home address" in navigation 141
Homepage BMW 4
Hood 221
Hooks for shopping bags 115, 116
Horn 10, 11
Hotel function, refer to Locking or unlocking separately 34
Hot exhaust system 121
"Hour memo" 80
"House number" in destination entry 133
Hydraulic brake assist, refer to Dynamic Brake Control DBC 86
Hydroplaning 121

I

IBOC, refer to High Definition Radio 163
Ice warning, refer to Outside temperature warning 71
ID3 tag, refer to Information about the track 171
Identification marks
– Run-Flat Tires 219
– tire coding 217
iDrive 16
– adjusting brightness 84
– assistance window 20
– automatic climate control 101
– changing language 84
– changing units of measure and display format 76
– confirming selection or entry 19
– controls 16
– displays, menus 17
– menu guidance 17
– operating principle 16
– overview 16
– selecting a menu item 19
– setting the date and time 79
– start menu 17
– status information 20
– switching menu pages 19
– symbols 18
iDrive operating principle 16
Ignition 56
– switched off 56
– switched on 56
Ignition key, refer to Remote control with integrated key 28
Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness 56
Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on 56
Ignition lock 56
i menu 18
Imprint 2
Indicator and warning lamps 13
– Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 92
Individual air distribution 101
Individually programmable buttons on steering wheel 50
Inflation pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 208
Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 90
Information
– on another location 136
– on country 136
– on current position 136
– on destination location 136
Information menu, refer to i menu 18
"Information on destination" 138
"Info sources" 77
Initializing
– active steering 93
– after power failure 234
– compass, refer to Calibrating 108
– Flat Tire Monitor FTM 89
– glass roof 40
– panorama glass roof 42
"Input map" 135
Installation location
– CD changer 173
– navigation DVD drive 128
– telephone 110
Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions 146
Instrument cluster 12
Instrument lighting 99

CarManuals2.com

Instrument panel, refer to Cockpit 10
Integrated key 28
Integrated universal remote control 106
Interesting destination for navigation 136
"Interim time" 84
Interior lamps 99
– remote control 30
Interior motion sensor 36
Interior rearview mirror 50
– automatic dimming feature 50
– compass 108
Interlock, refer to Disengaging the remote control 58
Intermittent mode of the wipers 61

J

Jacking points 233
Joystick, refer to iDrive 16
Jumpering, refer to Jump starting 236
Jump starting 236

K

Key, refer to Integrated key/ remote control 28
Keyless go, refer to Convenient access 36
Keyless opening and closing, refer to Convenient access 36
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 28
Kick-down 59
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
Knock control 207

L

Lamps
– automatic headlamp control 96
– parking lamps/low beams 96
Lamps and bulbs, replacing bulbs 229
"Language / Units" 76
"Language / Units" in navigation 129, 146
"Language" on the Control Display 84
"Languages" in navigation 129, 146
Lap-and-shoulder belt, refer to Safety belts 48
Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo 124
Last destinations, refer to Destination list 137
"Last seat pos." 48
LATCH child-restraint fixing system 53
LED hand lamp 110
LED Light-emitting diodes 229
Length, refer to Dimensions 243
License plate lamp, replacing bulb 233
Light-emitting diodes LED 229
Lighter 111
– connecting electrical appliances 112
"Lighting" 61
Lighting
– instruments 99
– lamps and bulbs 229
– vehicle, refer to Lamps 96
Light-metal alloy wheels, care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Light switch 96
"Limit" 83
Limit, refer to Speed limit 83
Load securing equipment, refer to Securing cargo 124
Lock buttons, doors, refer to Locking 32
Locking
– adjusting confirmation signal 31
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
– without remote control, refer to Convenient access 36
Locking and unlocking doors
– confirmation signals 31
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
Low-beam headlamps 96
– automatic 96
Low beams
– replacing bulbs 229
Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support 45
Luggage compartment lid 33
– convenient access 37
– emergency operation, refer to Opening manually 33
– emergency release 34
– locking or unlocking separately 34
– opening from inside 33
– opening from outside 33
– opening manually 33
– remote control 30
Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 124
Lumbar support 45

M

M+S tires, refer to Winter tires 220
Maintenance, refer to Service Booklet
Maintenance system 226
Malfunction
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 60
– luggage compartment lid/ tailgate 33
– tires 90
Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control 81

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Manual mode, automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
"Manual" on the radio 161
Manual operation
– door lock 31
– driver's door 31
– fuel filler door 206
– glass roof 40
– luggage compartment lid/ tailgate 33
– panorama glass roof 42
– transmission lock, automatic transmission 60
Manual transmission 58
Map
– changing scale 145
– destination entry 135
"Map direction of travel" 145
"Map facing north" 145
Master key, refer to Remote control with integrated key 28
Maximum cooling 102
Maximum speed
– with winter tires 220
Measurements, refer to Dimensions 243
Memory, refer to Seat and mirror memory 47
Memory keys, programmable 21
MENU button 16
Menus
– Control Display 17
Menus, refer to iDrive 16
Message list, traffic information 148
Microfilter
– BMW Maintenance System 226
– for automatic climate control 104
Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter
– BMW Maintenance System 226
Microphone
– telephone 14
– voice input 14
Mirror dimming feature 50
Mirrors 49
– automatic curb monitor 49
– exterior mirrors 49
– heating 49
– interior rearview mirror 50
– memory, refer to Seat and mirror memory 47
"Missed calls" 190
Missed calls 190
Mobile phone
– accepted calls 190
– adjusting volume 187
– calling 189
– ending call 189
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 110
– missed calls 190
– operation via iDrive 187
– redialing 190
– refer to separate Owner's Manual
– Top 8 190
– touch tone dialing 192
Mobile phone, installation location, refer to Center armrest 110
Mobile phone, refer to the separate Owner's Manual
Modifications, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Monitor, refer to iDrive controls 16
Monitoring system for tire pressures, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 89
"Monitor on / off" 51
Most recent mobile phone numbers 190
MP3, refer to Compressed audio files 169
Multifunctional steering wheel, refer to Buttons on the steering wheel 11
Multifunction switch
– refer to Turn signals/ headlamp flasher 60
– refer to Wiper system 61
Multimedia screen, refer to iDrive 16
Music tracks, refer to Tracks 170
"Mute on / off" 51

N

"Navigation" 130, 136
Navigation announcements, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off 146
Navigation drive, location 128
Navigation DVD 128

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Navigation system 128
– address book 138
– changing a route 147
– destination entry 130
– destination guidance in assistance window 128
– destination list 137
– displaying current position 151
– entering a destination manually 130, 134
– last destinations 137
– navigation DVD 128
– opening 130
– route display 144
– route list 146
– searching for a special destination 136
– selecting destination using information 136
– selecting destination via map 135
– selecting route criteria 141
– starting destination guidance 143
– switching off, refer to Terminating/continuing destination guidance 143
– terminating/continuing destination guidance 143
– voice instructions 146
– volume adjustment 147
"Navigation voice instructions" 129
"Navigation voice instructions" via buttons on the steering wheel 51
Neck support, refer to Head restraints 45
Nets, refer to Storage compartments 110
"New address" in navigation 139
"New destination" 131, 135
"New route" 147
New tires 219
"Next entertainment source" 51
North-facing map 145
Nozzles 100
Number of cylinders, refer to Engine data 242
Nylon rope, refer to Tow rope 239

O

OBD socket, refer to Socket for On-Board Diagnosis 227
Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications 207
Odometer 71
Oil, refer to Engine oil 222
Oil consumption 222
Oil level 222
Old batteries, refer to Disposal 234
"On a new destination" in navigation 137
"Onboard info" 74
Onboard tool kit 228
"On destination" 137
"On location" 137
Opening and closing
– convenient access 36
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
– using the door lock 31
– via the remote control 29
Operation by voice for mobile phone 193
– adjusting volume 194
– canceling 193
– correcting phone number 194
– dialing phone number 194
– placing a call 194
– redialing 194
– voice commands 193
– voice phone book 194
"Options" 201
Orientation menu, refer to Start menu 17
Outlets
– refer to Ventilation 103
Output, refer to Engine data 242
Outside-air mode
– automatic climate control 102
Outside-temperature display 71
– changing units of measure 76
– in computer 76
Outside temperature warning 71
Overheated engine, refer to Coolant temperature 72
Overriding selector lever lock 60

P

Panorama glass roof 40
– closing after electrical malfunction 42
– comfort position 41
– convenient operation 30
– initializing 42
– opening, closing 41
– pinch protection system 41
– power failure 42
– raising 41
– remote control 30
Park assistant, refer to Park Distance Control 85
"Parked car operation" 104
"Parked car ventilation" 104
Parked car ventilation 104
– activating switch-on times 105
– preselecting switch-on times 104
– switching on and off directly 104
Parking
– vehicle 57
Parking aid, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 85
Parking brake 57
– indicator lamp 58
Parking lamps 96
Parking lamps/low beams 96
– replacing bulbs 230
Partition net 114

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Passenger-side mirror tilt function 49
"Pathway lighting" 97
Pathway lighting 97
"PDC" 85
PDC Park Distance Control 85
Personal Profile 28
"Perspective" 145
Phone book 187
Phone numbers
– deleting from phone book 191
– dialing 189
– most recent numbers 190
– selecting in phone book 190
– Top 8 190
Pinch protection system
– glass roof, electric 40
– panorama glass roof 41
– windows 39
Placing a call, refer to telephone owner's manual
"Play" for satellite radio 167
Pollen
– refer to Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 104
Position
– displaying 151
– saving, refer to Storing current position 139
Power failure 234
Power windows 38
– safety switch 39
Power windows, refer to Windows 38
"Presets", displaying with the radio 160
"Presets" for satellite radio 167
Pressure, tires 208
Pressure monitoring, tires 89
– Flat Tire Monitor 89
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 90
"Profile" 203
Programmable buttons on the steering wheel 11
Programmable memory keys 21
Protection function, refer to Pinch protection system
– glass roof, electric 40
– panorama glass roof 41
– windows 39
Providing medical assistance, refer to First add pouch 236
Puncture
– Flat Tire Monitor 89

R

Radio
– autostore 161
– controls 156
– High Definition Radio 163
– listening to stations 160
– regional programs 163
– sampling stations 161
– satellite radio 166
– selecting a waveband 156, 160
– selecting the frequency manually 161
– station search 161
– stations with best reception 161
– storing stations 162
– switching on/off 156
– tone control 157
– volume 157
Radio position, refer to Radio readiness 56
Radio readiness 56
– switched off 56
– switched on 56
Radio-remote key, refer to Remote control with integrated key 28
Rain sensor 61
"Random", refer to Random play 172
"Random all" for audio mode 173
"Random directory" for audio mode 173
Random play 172
"RDS" Radio Data System 163
Reading lamps 99
Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps 231
– replacing bulb 232
Rear seat backrest, folding 114
Rear seats
– adjusting head restraints 46
– folding 114
– folding down backrests 113, 114
– folding head restraint down and up 46
Rear turn signals
– replacing bulb 232
Rear ventilation 104
Rearview mirror, refer to Mirrors 49
Rear window
– cleaning 62
– opening 35
Rear window blind, refer to Roller sun blinds 109
Rear window defroster 103
Rear window safety switch 39
Rear window wiper 62
– changing rear wiper blade 229
"Received calls" 190
Receiving level of mobile phone, refer to Status information 20
Recirculated-air mode 102
Recirculation of air, refer to Recirculated-air mode 102
Reclining seat, refer to Backrest 44
Recording times, refer to Stopwatch 83
"Redial" for mobile phone 190
Refueling 206
Releasing
– hood 221
Remaining distance, refer to Cruising range 73

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Remote control 28
– battery renewal 38
– convenient access 36
– garage door opener 106
– luggage compartment lid 30
– malfunction 31, 38
– removing from the ignition lock 56
– service data 226
– tailgate 30
"Repeat directory" for audio mode 172
"Repeat" for audio mode 172
"Repeat track" for audio mode 172
Replacement remote control 28
Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 229
Replacing tires 219
Replacing tires, refer to New wheels and tires 219
Reporting safety defects 6
Reserve warning, refer to Fuel gauge 72
"Reset" 89, 91
Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings 159
"Reset" for stopwatch 84
"Reset" for tone settings 159
Residual heat 103
Restraint systems
– for children 52
– refer to Safety belts 48
Reverse
– CD changer 173
– CD player 173
Reverse gear
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
– manual transmission 58
Road map 145
"Roadside Assistance" 198
Roadside Assistance 198, 235
Roadside parking lamps 98
– replacing bulbs 230
Roadworthiness test, refer to Service requirements 76
Roller blind
– sun blinds 109
Roof load capacity 245
Roof-mounted luggage rack 124
"Roomsound", refer to Tone control 158
Rope, refer to Tow-starting, towing away 239
Rotary/pushbutton, refer to iDrive 16
Route 141
– arrow display 144
– changing 147
– display 144
– displaying streets and towns/cities 146
– displaying town 146
– list 146
– map display 145
– selecting 141
– selecting criteria 141
RSC Runflat System Component, refer to Run-Flat Tires 219
Rubber parts, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Runflat System Component RSC, refer to Run-Flat Tires 219
Run-Flat Tires 219
– continuing driving with a damaged tire 90
– flat tire 90
– Flat Tire Monitor 90
– new tires 219
– replacing 219
– tire inflation pressure 208
– winter tires 220

S

Safety-belt height adjustment 48
Safety belts 48
– damage 49
– indicator/warning lamp 48
– reminder 48
– sitting safely 43
Safety belts, care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Safety systems
– airbags 94
– Antilock Brake System ABS 86
– brake system 86
– driving stability control systems 86
– Dynamic Stability Control DSC 86
– safety belts 48
Safety tires, refer to Run-Flat Tires 219
"SAT" 156, 166
Satellite radio 166
– displaying additional information 167
– enabling 166
– selecting channel 167
– storing channel 167
Saving fuel 120
"Scan"
– sampling radio stations 161
– sampling tracks on CD 171
Scan
– CD changer 171
– CD player 171
– radio 161
"Scan all" for audio mode 171
"Scan directory" for audio mode 171
Screen, refer to iDrive controls 16
Screw thread for tow fitting 238
SDARS, refer to Satellite radio 166
Seat adjustment
– electric 44
– mechanical 44
Seat and mirror memory 47
Seat belt reminder, refer to 'Fasten safety belts' reminder 48
Seat heating 47

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Seats 44
– adjusting electrically 44
– adjusting the seats 44
– heating 47
– memory, refer to Seat and mirror memory 47
– saving a setting, refer to Seat and mirror memory 47
– sitting safely 43
Securing cargo 117
Securing the vehicle
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
"Select as destination" 137, 201
"Select current speed" 83
Selecting a country for navigation 131
Selecting an audio source 156
Selecting distance for active cruise control 66
Selecting menu items 19
Selecting new scale for navigation 145
Selector lever
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
Selector lever lock, refer to Changing selector lever positions, shiftlock 59
Selector lever positions
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 235
Service car, refer to Roadside Assistance 235
Service data in the remote control 226
"Service Info" 77, 199, 223
Service Interval Display, refer to Condition Based Service CBS 226
"Service Request" 192, 199
Service requirement display, refer to Condition Based Service CBS 226
"Service requirements" 77, 199, 223
Service requirements 76
"Set date" 81
"Set time" 80
"Settings" 203
Settings
– changing settings on the Control Display 84
– clock, 12h/24h mode 80
– date format 81
– language 84
Settings and information 75
"Settings" for unlocking 29
Settings menu, refer to i menu 17
Setting times, refer to Preselecting switch-on times 104
Shifting gears
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
– manual transmission 58
Shiftlock
– automatic transmission, refer to Changing selector lever positions 59
Short commands for the voice command system 247
Shortest route in navigation, refer to Selecting route 141
"Short route" in navigation 141
"Show current position" 136
"Show destination position" 136
Shuffled, refer to Random
– CD changer 172
– CD player 172
Side airbags 94
Side window blind, refer to Roller sun blinds 109
Side windows, refer to Windows 38
Signal horn, refer to Horn 10, 11
Sitting safely 43
– with airbags 43
– with head restraint 43
– with safety belts 43
Ski bag 117
Sliding/tilt sunroof
– refer to Panorama glass roof 40
Sliding/tilt sunroof, refer to Glass roof, electric 39
Slot for remote control 56
Smokers' package, refer to Ashtray 111
Snap-in adapter, refer to Center armrest storage compartment 110
Socket, On-Board Diagnosis OBD 227
Socket, refer to Connecting electrical appliances 112
Song search, refer to Playing a track 171
SOS, refer to Sending an Emergency Request 235
Sound output for entertainment on/off 156
Spare fuses, 234
Spare fuses, refer to Fuses 234
Speaking, refer to Voice instructions from navigation system 146
Speed
– Run-Flat Tires 90
– with winter tires 220
Speed-dependent volume control 157
Speed limit 83
Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit 83
Speedometer 12
"Speed volume", refer to Tone control 158
Split rear seat backrest, refer to Expanding the cargo bay 114
Spray nozzles, refer to Cleaning windshield and headlamps 62
Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems 86

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Start/stop button 56
– starting the engine 57
– switching off the engine 57
"Start guidance" 133
Starting, refer to Starting the engine 57
Starting assistance, refer to Jump starting 236
Starting difficulties
– jump starting 236
Starting the engine
– start/stop button 56
Start menu 17
"Start service" 198
"Start Service" for BMW Assist 200
"State / Province" in destination entry 131
Station
– refer to Radio 160
"Status" 77
Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing 5
Steering wheel 50
– adjustment 50
– buttons on steering wheel 11
– freely programmable buttons 50
– lock 56
– locking with convenient access 37
– programmable buttons 50
"Steering wheel buttons" 51
Steering with variable ratio, refer to Active steering 93
Steptronic, refer to Automatic transmission with Steptronic 58
"Stopwatch" 84
Stopwatch 83
Storage compartments 110
Storage nets 115
"Store" for satellite radio 168
"Store in address book" in navigation 139
"Store" on the radio 162
Storing current position 139
Storing radio stations 162
Storing seat positions, refer to Seat and mirror memory 47
Storing tires 220
Stowage, refer to Storage compartments 110
"Street" in destination entry 133
Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires 208
Sun blinds 109
Surface ice, refer to Outside temperature warning 71
"Surround Settings", refer to Tone control 158
Switches, refer to Cockpit 10
Switching off
– engine 57
Switching off the engine
– start/stop button 56
Switching on
– audio 156
– CD changer 156
– CD player 156
– radio 156
Switching on the hour signal 80
Switching the cooling function on and off 103
Switch-on times of parked car ventilation, preselecting 104
Symbols 4
– navigation system 150
– status information 20
– traffic info for navigation system 147

T

Tachometer 71
Tailgate
– convenient access 37
– emergency operation, refer to Opening manually 33
– opening from inside 33
– opening from outside 33
– opening manually 33
– remote control 30
Tail lamps 231
– replacing bulb 232
Tank contents, refer to Capacities 246
Technical data 242
– capacities 246
– dimensions 243
Technical modifications, refer to For your own safety 5
Telematics, refer to TeleService, BMW Assist 197
Telephone
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 110
– refer to separate Owner's Manual
Telephone, refer to Mobile phone 182
"Telephone list" 51
TeleService 199
Temperature
– automatic climate control 101
– changing unit of measure 76
– coolant, refer to Coolant temperature 72
Temperature display
– outside temperature 71
– outside temperature warning 71
– setting the units 76
Tempomat, refer to Cruise control 63
Tensioning straps, refer to Securing cargo 124
"Terminate services" 202
"Text language" 84
"Theater" for Tone control 158
The individual vehicle 5
Third brake lamp, refer to Center brake lamp 233
Through-loading system 113
Through-loading system, refer to Expanding the cargo bay 114
Tilt alarm sensor 36
Tilt function, passenger-side mirror 49
"Time" 80

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

"Time / Date" 79, 80, 81
"Time format" 80
Timer, refer to Preselecting switch-on times 104
"Timer 2" for parked car ventilation/heating 105
"Timer 1" for parked car ventilation/heating 105
Tire inflation pressure 208
– loss 90, 91
Tire pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 89
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 90
– resetting the system 91
– system limitations 90
– warning lamp 92
Tire puncture, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 90
Tire Quality Grading 217
Tires
– age 217, 218
– air loss 92
– breaking in 120
– changing, refer to Changing wheels 233
– condition 218
– damage 218
– inflation pressure 208
– labels 217
– minimum tread depth 218
– new wheels and tires 219
– pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 89
– pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 90
– puncture 90
– replacing 219
– Run-Flat 219
– size 217
– storage 220
– tread depth 218
– wear indicators, refer to Minimum tread depth 218
– wheel/tire combination, refer to Correct wheels and tires 219
– winter tires 220
TMC station, refer to Traffic information 147
"Tone" 157
Tone in audio mode
– adjusting 157
– middle setting 159
Tools, refer to Onboard tool kit 228
"Top 8" for mobile phone 190
Torque, refer to Engine data 242
Touch tone dialing 192
Tow bar 238
Tow fitting 238
– screw thread 238
Tow fittings for tow-starting and towing away 238
Towing 237
– car with automatic transmission 237
– methods 238
Towing and tow-starting 237
Town/city for destination 131
"Town / City" in destination entry 131
Tow rope 239
Tow-starting 237, 239
"TPM" 91
TPM, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 90
Tracks
– random play sequence 172
– sampling, Scan 171
– searching for 171
Track width, refer to Dimensions 243
Traction control, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 86
Traffic information for navigation
– calling up 148
– display on route map 149
– during destination guidance 150
– switching on/off 147
– symbols 150
"Traffic Info settings" 148
Traffic jam
– displaying traffic information 147
– driving around 150
Transmission
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 58
– manual transmission 58
– overriding selector lever lock for automatic transmission with Steptronic 60
Transmission interlock
– refer to Changing selector lever position 59
– refer to P Park 59
Transporting children safely 52
Transport securing devices, refer to Securing cargo 124
Tread depth, refer to Minimum tire tread 218
Treble, refer to Treble and bass 157
Treble, tone control 157
"Trip computer" 74
Trip computer 74
Trip-distance counter, refer to Trip odometer 71
"Triple turn signal" 61
Triple turn signal activation 61
Trip odometer 71
Trunk, refer to Cargo bay 114
Trunk lid 33
Trunk lid, refer to Luggage compartment lid/tailgate 33
Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 243
Turn signal indicators
– indicator/warning lamp 12
– replacing bulbs 231
– triple turn signal 61
Turn signals 60
Tying down loads, refer to Cargo loading 124

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

U

Underbody protection, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Uniform Tire Quality Grading/ UTQR 217
"Units" 76
Units
– average consumption 76
– temperature 76
Universal garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 106
Universal mobile phone preparation package, refer to separate Owner's Manual
Universal remote control 106
Unlatching, refer to Unlocking 36
"Unlock button" 30
Unlocking
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
– luggage compartment lid 37
– tailgate 37
– without remote control, refer to Convenient access 36
"Update services" 201
USB-audio interface 176
"USB" for audio mode 175, 177

V

Vehicle
– battery 233
– breaking in 120
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– cargo loading 123
– Identification Number, refer to Engine compartment 222
– measurements, refer to Dimensions 243
– parking 57
– washing, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– weight 245
"Vehicle / Tires" for unlocking 30
Vehicle decommissioning
– refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Vehicle jack 233
Vehicle position, refer to Displaying current position 151
Ventilation 103
– draft-free 103
– in the rear 104
Ventilation, refer to Climate 100
Ventilation while at a standstill 104
Vents, refer to Ventilation 103
"Vent settings" 101
Voice commands
– overview 23
– short commands 247
Voice instructions from navigation system 146
– muting 51, 147
– repeating 51, 147
– switching on/off 146
– volume 147
Voice phone book 194
Volume 156
– audio sources 156
– fuel tank, refer to Capacities 246
– mobile phone 187
– speed-dependent control 157
– voice instructions 147
Volume distribution
– front/rear 157
– left/right 157

W

Warning and indicator lamps 13
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 81
Warning triangle 236
Washer fluid 62
– content of the reservoir 63
Washer fluid reservoir 62
Washing the car, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Waste tray, refer to Ashtray 111
Water on roads, refer to Driving through water 122
Waveband with the radio 160
Wear indicators in tires, refer to Minimum tread depth 218
Weights 245
Welcome lamps 96
"Welcome light" 97
Wheel/tire combination, refer to Correct wheels and tires 219
Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions 243
Wheels, new 219
Wheels and tires 208
Width, refer to Dimensions 243
Windows 38
– convenient operation 30
– opening, closing 38
– pinch protection system 39
– rear window 35
– safety switch 39
Windows, indicator on Control Display 16
Windshield
– cleaning 62
Windshield wash 61
– filling capacity, reservoir 246
– nozzles 62
– rear window 62
– reservoir for washer fluid 62
– washer fluid 62
Windshield wiper blades, changing 228
Windshield wipers, blades, care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Windshield wipers, refer to Wiper system 61
Winter tires 220
– setting speed limit 83
– storage 220

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Wiper blade replacement 228
Wiper system 61
"With highways" in navigation 141
Wooden trim, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Word-matching principle for navigation 142
Work in the engine compartment 221
Wrench/screwdriver, refer to Onboard tool kit 228

X

xDrive 87
Xenon lamps
– replacing bulb 229

Y

Your individual vehicle
– settings, refer to Personal Profile 28

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

01 41 0 014 254 ue iDrive

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 254 - © 08/07 BMW AG